ance and fupport, fhould attempt to fet up for inftructors of thofe that gave them bread; intimating, it feems, that none fhould fet up for inftruetors of others, but thofe who could live without them.

They gave me difmal accounts of the extremities they were driven to; how fometimes they were many days without any food at all; the ifland they were upon being inhabited by a fort of favages that lived more indoJent, and, for that reafon, were lefs fupplied with the neceffaries of life, than they had reafon to believe others were in the fame part of the world; and yet they found, that thefe favages were lefs ravenous and voracious than thafe who had better fupplies of food.

Alfo they added, that they could not but fee with what demonftrations of wifdom and goodnefs the governing providence of God directs the event of things in the world; which they faid, appeared in their circumftances; for if, preffed by the hardflips they were under, and the barrennefs of the country where they were they had fearched after a better place to live in, they had been out of the way of the relief that happened to them by my means.

Then' they gave me an account, how the favages, whom they lived among, expected thera to go out with them into their ways. And it was true, that, as they liad fire arms with them, had they not had the difafter to lofe their ammunition, they fhould not have been ferviceable only to sheir friends, but have made themtelves termble both to friends and enemies; but being without powder and Shot, and yet in a condition that they could not in reafon deny to go out with their landlords to their wars, when they came in the field of battle, they were in a worfe condition than the favages themfelves; for they neither had bows nor arrows, nor conld they ufe thofe the favages gave them; fo that they could do nothing but ftand ftill, and be wounded with arrows, Eill they came up to the teeth of their enemy; and then, indeed, the three halberts they had, were of ufe to them, and they would often drive a whole Hittle army before them, with thofe halberts and fharpened fticks put into the muzzles of their mufquets : but
that, for all this, they were fordetimes furrounded with multitudes, and in great danger from their arrows; till at laft they found the way to make themfelves large targets of wood, which they covered with fkins of wild beafts, whofe names they knew not; and thefe covered them from the arrows of the favages. That, notwithftanding thefe, they were fometimes in great thele, they were cometimes in great danger, and were once five of them knocked down together, with the clubs
of the favages, which was the time of the favages, which was the time
when one of them was taken prifoner; that is to fay, the Spaniard, whom I had relieved. That at firft they thought he had been killed, but when afterwards they heard he was taken prifoner, they were under the greateft grief imaginable, and would willingly have all ventured their lives to have refcued him.

They told me, that when they were Co knocked down, the reft of their company refcued them, and food over them, fighting till they were come to themfelves, all but he, who they thought had been dead; and then they made their way with their halberts and pieces, ftanding clofe together in a pieces, through about a body of above a thoufand favages, beating down all that came in their way, got the victory over their enemies, but to their great forrow, becaufe it was with the lofs of their friend, whom the other party, finding him alive, carried off with fome others, as I gave an account in my former.

They defcribed mort affecionately, how they were furprized with joy at the yeturn of their friend and companion in mifery, who they thought had been devaured by wild bealts of the worft kind, viz. by wild men $;$ and yet, how more and more they were furprized with the account he gave them of his errand, and that there was a Chriftian in any place near, much more one that was able, and had humanity enough to contribute to their deliverance.

They defcribed how they were aftonifhed at the fight of the relief I fent them, and at the appearance of loaves of bread, things they had not feen fince their coming to that miferable place; how often they croffed it, and blefled it as bread fent from heaven ; and what a reviving cordial it was to
their fpirits to tafte it; as alfo, of the other things I had fent for their fupply. And, after all, they would have told me fomething of the joy they were in, at the fight of a boat and pilots to carry them away to the perfon and place from whence all thefe new comforts came; but they told me it was impoffible to exprefs it by words; for their exceffive joy naturally driving them to unbecoming extravagancies, they had no way to defcribe them, but by telling me, that they bordered upon lunacy, having no way to give vent to their paffion fuitable to the fenfe that was upon them; that in fome it worked one way, and in fome another; and that fome of them, through a furprize of joy, would burf out into tears, others be half mad, and others immediately faint. This difcourfe extremely affected me, and calied to my mind Friday's extafy when he met his father, and the poor people's extafy when I took them up at fea after their Ship was on fire; the mate of the fhip's joy, when he found himfelf delivered in the place where he expected to perifh; and my own joy, when, after twenty-eight years captivity, I found a good hhip ready to carry me to my own country. All thefe things made me more fenfible of the relation of thefe poor men, and more affected with it.
Having thus given a view of the flate of things, as I found them, I muft relate the heads of what I did for thefe people, and the condition in which I left them. It was their opinion, and mine too, that they would be troubled no more with the favages; or that, if they were, they would be able to cut them off, if they were twice as many as before; fo that they had no concern about that. Then I entered into a ferious difcourfe with the Spaniard, whom I called governor, about their ftay in the ifland; for, as I was not come to carry any of them off, fo it would not be jult to carly off fome, and leave others, who, perbaps, would be unwilling to fay, if their ftrength was diminifhed.

On the other hand, I told them, I came to eftablifh them there, not to remove them; and then Ilet thein know, that I had brought with me relief of fundry kinds for them; that I had been at a great charge to fupply them
with all things neceflary, as well for their convenience as their defence; and that I had fuch and fuch particular perfons with me, as well to increafe and recruit their number, as by the particular neceffary employments which they were bred to, being artificers, to affit them in thofe things, in which, at prefent, they were to feek.

They were all together when I talked thus to them ; and before I delivered to them the ftores I had brought, I alked them, one by one, if they had entirely forgot and buried the firtt animofities that had been among them, and could fhake hands with one another, and engage in a ftrict friendthip and union of intereft, fo that there might be no more mifunderftandings or jealoufies.

William Atkins, with abundance of franknefs and good-humour, faid, they had met with afllictions enough to make them all fober, and enemies enough to make them all friends; that, for his part, he would live and die with them; and was fo far from defigning any thing againft the Spaniards, that he owned they had done nothing to him but what his own bad humour made neceffary, and what he would have done, and perhaps much worle, in their cafe; and that he would afk them pardon, if I defired it, for the foolifl and brutioh things he had done to them; and was very willing and deffrous of living in terms of entire friendihip and union with them, and would do any thing that lay in his power to convince them of it: and as for going to England, he cared not if he did not go thither thefe twenty years.

The Spaniards faid they had in deed, at firtt, difarmed and excluded William Atkins and his two countrymen, for their ifl conduct, as they had let me know; and they appealed to me, for the neceflity they were under to do fo; but that William Atkins had bebaved himfelf fo bravely in the great fight they had with the favagesy, and on feveral accafions ifince, and had thewed himfelf fo faithful too; and concermed for the general intereft of them all, that they had forgotten all that was paft, and thought he merited as much to be trufted with arims, and fupplied with neceffaries, as any of them; and that athey hod teftified thair fatisfaction in him, by commit-

## ROBINSON CRUSQE.

ting the command to him, next to the governor himfelf; and as they had an entire confidence in him, and all his countrymen, fo they acknowledged hey had merited that confidence, by all the methods that honeft men could merit to be valued and trufted; and they moft heartily embraced the occafion of giving me this affurance, that they would never have any intereft feparate from one another.

Upon thefe frank and open declarations of friendfhip, we appointed the next day to dine all together; and indeed we made a fplendid feaft. I caufed the ihip's cook and his mate to come on fhore and drefs jour dinner; and the old cook's mate we had on fhore affifted. We brought on fhore fix pieces of good beef, and four pieces of pork, out of the Mhip's provifion, with our punch-bowl; and materials to fill it ; and, in particular, I gave them ten bottles of French claret, and ten bottles of Englifh beer; things that neither the Spaniards of the Englifhmen had talted for many years, and which it may be fuppofed they were exceeding glad of.
The Spaniards added to our feaft five whole kids, which the cooks roafed ; and three of them were fent, covered up clofe, on board our thip, to the feamen, that they might fealt on frefh meat from on thore, as we did with their falt meat from on board.
After this feaft, at which we were very innocently merry, I brought out my cargo of goods, wherein, that there might be no difpute about dividing, I Shewed them there was fufficient for them all; and defired, that they might all take an equal quantity of the goods that were for wearing; that is to fay, equal when made up. As firft, I difrributed linen fufficient to make every one of them four hirts; and, at the Spaniard's requeit, afterwards made them up fix : thefe were exceeding comfortable to them, having been what, as I may fay, they had long fince forgot the ufe of, or what it was to wear them.
I allotted the thin Englifh ftuffs, swhich I mentioned before, to make everylone a light coat like a frock, which I judged fitteft for the heat of the feafon, cool and loofe ; and ordered, that whenever they decayed,
they fhould make more, as they thought fit : the like for pumps, fhoes, ftockings, and hats, \&cc.

I cannot exprefs what pleafure, what fatisfaction, fat upon the countenances of all thefe poor men, when they faw the care I had taken of them, and how well I had furnifhed them. They told me, I was a father to them; and that, having fuch a correfpondent as I was in fo remote a part of the world, it would make them forget that they were left in a defolate place: and they all voluntarily engaged to me, not to leave the place without my confent.

Then I prefented to them the people I had brought with me; particularly, the taylor, the fmith, and the two carpenters, all of them moft neceffary people; but, above all, my general artificer, than whom they could not, name any thing that was more needful to them. And the taylor, to fhew his concern for them, went to work immediately, and, with my leave, made them every one a thirt the firft thing he did ; and, which was fill more, he taught the women not only how to few and ftitch, and ufe the needle, but made them affift to make the flirts for their hufbands, and for all the reft.
As to the carpenters, I fcarce need mention how ufeful they were, for they took in pieces all my clumfy unhandy things, and made them clever convenient tables, ftools, bedfteads, cupboards, lockers, fhelves, and every thing they wanted of that kind.

But, to let them fee how nature made artificers at firf, I carried the carpenters to fee William Atkins's baiket-houfe, as I called it; and they both owned, they never faw an infance of fuch natural ingenuity before: nor any thing fo regular, and fo handily built, at leaft of it's kind: and one of them, when he faw it, after mufing a good while, turning about to me, 'I am fure,' fays he, 'that - man has no need of us; you need 6 do nothing but give him tools.
Then I brought them out all my fore of tools, and gave every man a digging-fpade, a fhovel, and a rake, for we had no harrows or ploughs; and, to every feparate place, a pickax, a crow, a broad-ax, and a faw : always appointing, that as often as any were broken, or worn out, they

Jhould be fupplied, without grudging, out of the general ftores that 1 left behind,
Nails, ftaples, hinges, hammers, chiffels, knives, fciffars, and all forts of tools and iron-work, they had without tale, as they required; for no man would care to take more than they wanted; and he mult be a fool that would wafte or fpoil them on any account whatever : and, for the ufe of the fmith, I left two tons of unwrought iron for a fupply.

My magazine of powder and arms, which I brought them, was fuch, even to profufion, that they could not but rejoice at them; for now they could march, as I ufed to do, with a mufquet upon each fhoulder, if there was occafion; and were able to fight a thoufand favages, if they had but fome little advantages of fituation; which alfo they could not mifs of, if they had occafion.
I carried on fhore with me the young man, whofe mother was ftarved to death, and the maid alfo. She was a fober, well-educated, religious young woman; and behaved fo inoffenfively, that every one gave her a good word. She had, indeed, an unhappy life with us, there being no woman in the fhip but herfelf; but fhe bore it with patience. After a while, feeing things fo well ordered, and in fo fine a way of thriving upon my illand; and confidering they had neither bufinefs nor acquaintance in the Eatt-Indies, or reafon for taking fo long a voyage ; I fay, confidering all this, both of them came to me, and defired I would give them leave to remain on the ifland, and be entered among my family, as they called it.

I agreed to it readily; and they had a little plot of ground allotted to them, where they had three tents or houfes fet up, furrounded with a bafket-work, pallifadoed like Atkins's, and adjoining to his plantation : their tents were contrived fo, that they had each of them a room apart to lodge in, and a middle tent, like a greai ftope-houfe, to lay all their goods in, and to eat and drink in. And now the other two Englifhmen removed their habitation to the fame place; and fo the illand was divided into three colonies, and no more ; viz. the Spaniards with old

Friday, and the firf fervants, at my old habitation under the hill; which was, in a word, the capital city; and where they had fo enlarged and extended their works, as well under, as on the outfide of the hill, that they lived, thougl perfectly concealed, yet full at large. Never was there fuch a little city in a wood, and fo hid, I believe, in any part of the world: for, I verily believe, a thoufand men might have ranged the ifland a month, and, if they had not known there was fuch a thing, and looked on purpofe for it, they would not have found it; for the trees food fo thick and fo clofe, and grew fo faft matted into one another, that nothing but cutting them down firft could difcover the place; except the two narrow entrances where they went in and out could be found, which was not very eafy. One of them was juft down at the water's edge, on the fide of the creek; and it was afterwards above two hundred yards to the place; and the other was up the ladder at twice, as I have already formerly defcribed it ; and they had a large wood, thick planted alfo, on the top of the bill, which contained above an acre, which grew apace, and covered the place from all difcovery there, with onlyone narrow place between two trees, not eafy to be difcovered, to enter on that fide.

The other colony was that of Will Atkins's, where there were four families of Englifhmen; I mean, thofe I bad left there with their wives and children; three favages that were flaves; the widow and children of the Englifhman that was killed; the young man and the maid ; and, by the way, we made a wife of her alfo betore we we made a wife of her alfo, be we went away: there were allo the woht carpenters and the taylor, who I brought with me for them; allo the fmith, who was a very neceffary man to them, efpecially as a gunfmith, to take care of their arms; and my other man, whom I called Jack of all Trades, who was himfelt as good almoft, as twenty men, for he was not only a very ingenious fellow, but a very merry fellow; and, before I went away, we married him to the honeft maid hhit cane with yout in the thip whom I mentioned before.
And now I fpeak of marrying, it
brings
brings me naturally to fay fomething of the French eccleffaffick that I had brought with me out of the fhip's crew whom I took at fea. It is true, this man was a Roman; and, perhaps, it may give offence to fome hereafter, if I leave any thing extraordinary upon record of a man whom, before I begin, I mult (to fet him out in juft colours) reprefent in terms very much to his difadvantage in the account of Proteftants: as firft, that he was a Papift; fecondly, a popifh prieft; and, thirdly, a French popifh prieft.
But juftice demands of me to give him a due character; and 1 muft fay, he was a grave, fober, pious, and molt religious perfon; exact in his life, extenfive in his charity, and exemplary in almof every thing he did. What then can any one fay againft my being very fenfible of the value of fuch a man, notwithitanding hirs profeffion? though it may be my opinion, perhaps, as well as the opinion of others, who fhall read this, that he was miftaken.

The firft hour that I began to converfe with him, after he had agreed to go with me to the Eaft-Indies, I found reafon to delight exceedingly in his converfation: and he firft began with me about religion, in the molt obliging manner imaginable.
'Sir,' fays he, 'you have not only, © under God,' (and at that he cioffed his breaft ' faved my life, but you - have admitted me to go this voyage - in your hip; and, by your obliging 6 civility, have taken me into your - family, giving me an opportunity of - free converlation. Now, Sir, fays he, - you fee by my habit, wliat my pro-- feffion is; and I guefs by your na-- tion, what yours is. I may think 6 it is my duty, and, doubtlefs, it is \& fo, to ufe my utmot endeavours, on - all occafions, to bring all the fouls G that I can to the knowledge of the 6 trith, and to embrace the Catholick - doctrine; but, as I am here under * your permifion, and in your family, 6 I am bound in juffice to vour kindc nefs, as well as in decency and goud 6 manners, to be under your govern6 ment; and therefore 1 fhall not, 6 without your leave, enter iato any ${ }^{6}$ debates on the points of religion in * which we may not agree, farther 6 than you thall give me leave.

I told him his carriage was fo modelf, that F could not but acknowledge it; that it was true we were fuch people as they called hereticks; but that he was not the firft Catholick that I had converled with, without falling into any inconveniences, or carrying the queftions to any height in debate; that he fhould not find himfelf the worfe ufed for being of a different opinion from us; and if we did not converfe without any dillike on either fide, upon that fcore, it would be his fault, bot ours.

He replied, that he thought our converfation might be eafily feparated from difputes; that it was not his bufinefs to cap principles with every man he difcourfed with; and that he rather defired me to converfe with him as a gehtleman than as religieux; that if I would give him leave at any time to difcoarie upon religious fubjects, he would readily comply with it ; and that then he did not doubt but I would allow him alfo to defend his own opinions as well as he could; but that, without my leave, he would not break in upon me with any fuch thing.
Te told me farther, tbat he would not ceafe to do all that became him in his office as a prieft, as well as a private Chriftian, to procure the good of the fhip, and the fafety of all that was in her; and though, perhaps, we would not join with him, and he could not pray with us, he hoped he might pray for us, which he would do upon all occafions. In this manner we converf. $e d$; and as he was of a moflobliging geitleman-like behaviour, fo he was, gemteman-like behaviour, fo he was,
if 1 may be allowed to fay fo, a man of good renfe, and, as I believe, of great learning:

Hegaye me a moff diverting account of his life, and of the many extraordinary events of it; of many adventures which had befallen him in the few years that he had been abroad in the world, and particularly this was very remarkable; viz. That dâring tlie voyage lle was now engaged in, he hat the misfortune to be five times flipped and unftipped, and never to go to the place whither any of the flips he was in were at firtt defigned: that his firft intent was to have gone to Martinico; and that he went on board a flip bouifd tifither'at St. Maloe's ; but being forced into Lifbon in bad weather,
the thip received fome damage, by running aground in the mouth of the River Tagus, and was obliged to unload her cargo there: that finding a Portugueze thip there bound to the Madeiras, and ready to fail, and fuppofing he fhould eafily meet with a veffel there bound to Martinico, he went on board in order to fail to the Madeiras ; but the malter of the Portugueze fhip, being but an indifferent mariner, had been out in his reckoning, and they drove to Fial; where, however, he happened to find a very good market for his cargo, which was corn, and therefore refolved not to go to the Madeiras, but to load falt at the Ifle of May, to go away to Newfoundland. He had no remedy in this exigence but to go with the fhip; and had a pretty good voyage as far as the Banks, (fo they call the piace where they catch the fif) where meeting with F French hip bound from France to Quebec, in the River of Canada, and from thence to Martinico, to carry provifions, he thought he fould have an opportunity to compleat his firft defign; but when he came to Quebee, the matter of the fhip died, and the thip proceeded no farther : fo the nest voyage he fhipped himielf for France in the thip that was burnt, when wee took them up at fea, and then fhipped himfelf with us for the Eaft-Indies, as I have already faid. Thus he had been difappointed in five yoyages, all, as I may call it, in one voyage, befides what I thall have occafion to mention farther of the fame pertion.

But I fhall not make digreffions into other men's ftories, which have no relation to my own. I return to what concerns our affairs in the ilfand. He came to me one morning, for he lodged among us all the while we were apon the ifland, and it happened io be juft when I was going to vifit the Englifhmen's colony at the fartheft part of the ifland; I fay, he came to me, and told me, with a very grave countenance, that he had for two or three days defired an opportuaity of fome difcourfe with me, which, he hoped, would not be difpleafing to me, becaufe he thought it might, in fome meafure, correfpond with my general defign, which was the profperity of my new colony; and, perhaps, might
put it, at leaft mare than he yet thought it was, in the way of God's bleffing. I looked a little furprized at the laft part of his difcourfe; and turning a little fhort, 'How, Sir,' faid I, 'can - it be faid that we are not in the way of God's bleffing, after fuch vifible 6 affifances and wonderful deliverances as we have feen here, and of which I have given you a large account ?'
'If you had pleafed, Sir,' faid he, with a world of modefty, and yet with great readinefs, 'to have heard me, 6 you would have found no room to thave been difpleafed, much lef's to have been dirl fousd mo rom to ' think fo hard of me, that I hould - fuggelt that you have not had won-- derful affifances and deliverances : 6 and, I hope, on your behalf, that 6 you are in the way of God's blef6 fing, and your defion is exceeding s ord and will proper But Sire Ggood, and will proper. But, sir, faid he, ' though it were more fo than 6 is even polifible to you, yet there may 6 be fome among you that are not 6 equally right in their actions : and 6 you know, that in the fory of Ifrael, 6 one Achan, in the camp, removed 6 God's blefing from them, and turn ed his hand $f_{0}$ arainit them, that thing ie of lo agat cery-ix of them, though not concerned in the crame, were the objects of Divine Vengeance, and bore the weight of that punifhment.
I was fenfibly touched with this difcourfe, and told him his inference was fo jult, and the whole delign feemed fo fincere, and was really fo religious in it's own nature, that I was forry I had interrupted him, and begged him to go on; and in the mean time, becaufe it feemed that what we had both to fay might take up fome time, I told him I was going to the Engliflmen's plantations, and akked him to go with me, and we might difcourfe of it by the way. He told me, he would more willingly wait on me thither, becaufe there partly, the thing was afted which party, So So we walked on, and I prefied him to be free and plain with me in what he had to fay.

Why then, Sir,' fays he, 'be - pleafed to give me leave to lay down - a few propofitions, as the founda-- tion of what I have to fay, that we 6 may not differ in the general priu-

- ciples, though we may be of foitie - differing opinions in the practice of - particulars. Firt, Sir, though we - differ in fome of the doctrinal arti-- cles of religion, and it is very un-- happy that it is fo, efpecially in the - care before us, as I finall fhew after-- wards, yet there are fome general - principles in which we both agree; - viz. Firft, that there is a God; and - that this God, having given us fome - ftated general rules for our fervice - and obedience, we ought not willing - ly and knowingly to offend him, ei-- ther by neglecting to do what he has - commanded, or by doing what he - has exprefsly forbidden : and let our - different religions be what they will, - this general principle is readily own-- ed by us all; that the bleffing of - God dues not ordinarily followa pre-- fumptuous finning againft his com-- mand ; and every good Chriltian will - be affectionately concerned to pre-- vent any that are under his care liv-- ing in a total neglect of God and his - commands. It is not your men be-- ing Proteftants, whatever my opis nion may be of fuch, that difcharges - me from being concerned for their - fouls, and from endeavouring, if it - lies before me, that they fhould live c in as little diftance from, and enmi6 ty with, their Maker as poffible; - efpecially if you give me leave to - meddle fo far in your circuit.'

I could not yet imagine what he aimed at, and told him, I granted all he had faid; and thanked him, that he would fo far concern himfelf for us: and begged he would explain the particulars of what he had obferved, that, like Jofnua, (to take his own parable) I might put away the accurfed thing from us.

Why, then, Sir,' fays he, 'I will - take the liberty you give me; and - there are three things which, if I am * right, muft ftand in the way of God's - bleffing upon your endeavours here, 6 and which I faould rejoice, for your - fake and their own, to fee removed.

- And, Sir,' fays he, 'I promife my-- felf that you will fully agree 6 with me in them all as foon as I - fhall name them; efpecially, be-- caufe I fhall convince you that every - one of them may with great eafe, - and very much to your fatisfaction, - be remedied.

He gave me no leave to put in any more civilities, but went on. 'Firf, - Sir,' rays he, 'you have here four - Englifhmen, who have fetched wo-- men from aimong the favages, and - have taken therin as their wives, and G have had many children by them all, 6 and yet are not married to them af-- ter any ftated legal manner, as the - laws of God and man require ; and - therefore are yet, in the fenfe of 6oth, no lefs than adulterers, and - living in adultery. To this, Sir,' fays he, 'I know you will object, that - there was no clergyman, or prieft of - any kind, or of any profeffion, to ' perform the ceremony; nor any pen ' and ink, or paper, to write down a - contract of marriage, and have it - figned between thent. And I know - alfo, Sir, what the Spaniard gover-- nor has told you; I mean, of the - agreement that he obliged them to - make when they took thefe women; - viz. That they fhould chufe therh - out by confent, and keep feparately ' to them ; which, by the way, is no - thing of a marriage, no agreement - with the women as wives, but only 6 an agreement among themfelves to - keep them from quarrelling.

- But, Sir, the effence of the facra' ment of matrimony,' (fo he called it, being a Roman) 'confifts not only in t the mutual confent of the parties to
6 take one another as man' and wife,
- but in the formal and legal obliga6 tion that there is in the contract, to - compel the man and woman; at all - times, to own and acknowledge each - other; obliging the man to abftain from atl other women, to engage in 6 no other conitraet while this fublatts; 6 and on all occafions, as ability al-- lows, to provide honeftly for them 6 and their children; and to oblige the - woman to the fame, or like condi-- tions, mutatis mutandis, on their - fide.
- Now, Sir,' fays he, 'thefe ment - may, when they pleafe; or when od-- cafion prefents, abandon thefe wo-- men, difown their children, leave - them to perifh, and take other wo' men and marry them whilit thefe are ' living.' And here he added, with fome warmth, 'How, Sir, is God ho-- noured in this unlawtul liberty! - And how fhall a bleffing fucceed - your endeavours in this place, how-
t ever good in themfelves, and how-- ever fincere in your defign; while 6 thefe men, who at prefent are your - fubjects, under your abfolute go-- vernment and domimion, are allow
- by you to live in was ftruck at the thing itfelf, but much more with the convincing arguments he fupported it with; for it was certainly trie, that though they had no clergyman on the fpot, yet a formal contract on both fides, made before witnefles, and confirmed by any token which they had all agreed to be bound by, though it had been but the breaking a flick between them, engaging the men to own thefe women for their wives upon all occafions, and never to abandon them or their children, and the women to the fame with their hufbands, had been an effectual lawful marriage in the fight of God; and it was a great neglect that it was not done.
But I thought to have gotten off with my young prieft, by telling him that all that part was done when I was not here; and they had lived fo many years with thern now, that if it was ah adultery, it was paft remedy; they could do nothing in it now.
'Sir,' fays he, ' afking your par-- don for fuch freedom, you are right - in this; that it being done in your - abfence, you could not be charged 6 with that part of the crime: but, I 6 befeech you, flatter not yourfelf that 6 you are not therefore under an obli-- gation to do your uttermoft now to put c an end to it. How can you think - but that, let the time paft lie on 6 whom it will, all the guilt, for the 6 future, will lie entirely upon you? - becaufe it is certainly in your pow-
- er now to put an end to it; and in - nobody's power but yours.'

I was fo dull ftill that I did not take him right; but I imagined, that by putting an end to it he meant that I fhould part them, and not fuffer them to live together any lorger: and I faid to him I could not do that by any means, for that it would put the whole ifland in confufion. He feerhed furprized that I fhould fo far miftake him. 'No, Sir,' fays he, 'I do not 6 mean that you fhould feparate them, 6 but legally and effectually marry 6 them now : and, Sir, as my way of 6 marrying may not be fo eafy to re-

- concile them to, though it will be as effectual, even by your own laws; fo your way may be as well before - God, and as valid among men ; I - mean, by a written contract, figned by both man and woman, and by 6 all the witneffes prefent; which all the laws of Europe would decree to be valid.'
I was amazed to fee fo much true piety, and fo much fincerity of zzeal, befides the unufual impartiality in his difcourfe, as to his own party or church; and fuch a true warmth for the preferving people that he had no knowledge of, or relation to; I fay, for preferving them from tranfgreffing the lawis of God; the like of which I had, indeed, not met with any where. But recollecting what he had faid of marrying them by a written contract, which I knew would fand too; I returned it back upon him, and told him, I granted all that he had faid to be juit, and on his part very kind 3 that I would difcourfe with the men upon the point now, when I came to them. And I knew no reafon why they fhould foruple to let him marry them all; which I knew well enough would be granted to be as authentick and valid in England, as if they were married by one of our own clergymen. What was afterwards done in this matter, I fiall fpeak of by itfelf.

I then preffed him to tell me what was the fecond complaint which he had to make; acknowledging, that I was very much his debtor for the firft, and thianked him heartily for it. $\mathrm{H}_{6}$ told me, he would ufe the fame freedom and plainnefs in the fecond; and hoped I would take it as well : and this was, that, notwithftanding there Englifh fubjects of mine, as he called them, had lived with thefe women for almoft feven years, and had taught them to fpeak Englifh, and even to read it; and tiat they were, as he perceived, women of tolerable underftanding, and capable of inftuction; yet. they had not to this hour taught them, any thing of the Chriftian religion; no not fo much as to know that there was a God, or a worfhip, or in what manner God was to be ferved ; or that their own idolatry, and worfhipping they knew not who, was falle and abfurd.

This, he fald, was an unaccountable
negled.
neglect, and what God would certainly call them to an account for; and, perhaps, at laft take the work out of their hands. He fpoke-this very affeetionately and warmly, 'I am per-- fuaced,' fays he, 'had thofe men - lived in the favage country whence - their wives came, the favages would

- havetaken more pains to have brought t them to be idolaters, and to workhip - the devil, than any of there men, fo - far as I can fee, has taken with them - to teach them the knowledge of the - true God. Now, Sir,' faid he, - though I do not acknowledge your - religion, or you mine, yet we fhould - be all glad to fee the devil's fervants, 6 and the fubjects of his kingdom, 6 taught to know the general principles - of the Chriftian religion; that they < might, at leaft, hear of God and of a - Redeemer, and of the refurrection and - of a future ftate, things which we all - believe; they had, at leaft, been fo 6 much nearer coming into the bofom 6 of the true church, than they are s now in the publick profeffion of ido-- latry and devil-worfhip.'

I could hold no longer; I took him in my arms and embraced him with an excefs of paffion. 'How far,' faid I to him, 'have I been from under-- flanding the mof effential part of a <Chritian; viz. to love the intereft s of the Cbrifian church, and the - good of other men's fouls? I fcarce - have known what belongs to being - a Chriftian 1 - 0 , sir, do not fay - fo,' replied he; 'this thing is not - your fault.'- No!' faid I, 'but * why did I never lay it to heart as - well as you ?'-' 'Tis not too late - yet,' faid he; 'be not too forward - to condemn yourfelf.:- But what - can be done now?' faid I; 'you fee - I am going away:-' Will you give - me leave,' faid he, 'to talk with * thefe poor men about it?' - Yes, - with all my heart,' faid I; 'and will - oblige them to give heed to what 5 you fay too.: -As to that,' faid he, - we muft leave them to the mercy of - Chrift; but it is our bufinefs to affift - them, encourage them, and inftruct - them; and, if you will give me - Leave, and God his bleffing, I do - not doubt but the poor ignorant fouls - Mall be brought home into the great - circle of Chrifianity, if not into the - particular faith that we all embrace;
"and that even while you ftay here." Upon this I faid, 'I fhall not only give you leave, but give you a thoufand thanks for it.' What followed on this account I fhall mention alfo again in it's place.
I nuw preffed him for the third article in which we were to blame. - Why, really,' fays he, 'it is of the fame nature, and I will proceed (ank6 ing your leave) with the fame plain-- nefs as before. It is about your poor - favages yonder, who are, as I may - fay, your conquered fubjects. It is ' a maxim, Sir, that is, or ought to - be received among all Chriftians, of \& what church or pretended church - foever; viz. that Chriftian know-- ledge ought to be propagated by all - poffible means, and on all poffible - occafions. It is on this principle - that our church fends miffionaries 6 into Perfia, India, and China ; and 6 that our clergy, even of the fuperior - fort, willingly engage in the moft - hazardous voyages, and the moft dan-- gerous refidence among murderers 6 and barbarians, to teach them the 6 knowledge of the true God, and to 6 bring them over to embrace the - Chriftian faith. Now, Sir, you have * fuch an opportunity here to have fix - or feven and thirty poor favages - brought over from idolatry to the ' knowledge of God, their Maker and - Redeemer, that I wonder how you - can pafs fuch an occafion of doing - good, which is really worth the ex-- pence of a man's whole life.'

I was now ftruck dumb indeed, and had not one word to fay. I had here a fpirit of true Chriftian zeal for God and religion before me, let his particular principles be of what kind foever. As for me, I had not fo much as entertained a thought of this in my heart before; and, I believe, fhould not have thought of it ; for I looked upon thefe favages as flaves and people whom, had we any work for them to do, we would have ufed as fuch, or would have been glad to have tranfported them to any other part of the world; for our bufinefs was to get rid of them; and we would all have been fatisfied if they had been fent to any country, fo they had never feen their own. But to the cafe: I fay, I was confounded at his difcourfe, and knew not what anfwer to make him. He looked earneftly
at me, feeing me in fome diforder. - Sir,' faid he, 'I fhall be very forry - if what I have faid gives you any of - fence.- ' No, no,' faid I, 'I am 6 offended with nobody but myfelf but I merfesly confounded, not 6 but I am perfectly confounded, not only to think that I hould never - take any notice of this before, but 6 with reflecting what Youknow, Sir, to I, circumfances I am in - I am bound to the Eaft-Indies in a - fhip freighted by merchants, and to - whom it would be an infufferable - piece of injuftice to detain their hip - here, the men lying all this while 6 at victuals and wages upon the own-- er's account. It is true, I agreed - to be allowed twelve days here; and - if I ftay more I muft pay $3^{1}$. fterling - per diem demurrage: nor can I ftay - upon demurrage above eight days s more; and I have been here thirteen - days already; fo that I am perfeetly - unable to engage in this work, un-- lefs I would fuffer myfelf to be left - behind here again; in which cafe, if - this fingle fhip fhould mifcarry in - any part of her voyage, I fhould be - juft in the fame condition that I was - Ieft in here at firft, and from which - I have been fo wonderfully deliver-- ed.?

He owned the cafe was very hard upon me as to my voyage; but laid it home upon my confcience, wherher the bleffing of faving feven and thirty fouls was not worth my venturing all I had in the world for. I was not fo fenfible of that as he was; and I reurned apon him thus: 'Why, Sir, it is a valuable thing indeed, to be an inf ument in God's hand to con an rument in cod heathens to the vert leven and thirty heathens to the knowledge of Chrift; but as you are an ecclefiaitick, and are given over to that work, fo that it feem s 6 naturally to fall into the way of ' your profeffion, how is it then that - you do not rather offer yourfelf to 6 undertake it, than preis me to it ?
Upon this he faced about, juft before me , as he walked along, and puting me to a full ftop, made me a very low bow. 'I mof heartily thank - God and you, Sir,' fays he, 'for ' giving me fo evident a call to $o$ - bleffed a work; and if you think - yourfelf difcharged from it, and de-- fire me to undertake it, I will moft

6 readily do it, and think it a happy re6 ward for al the hazards and difficul-- ties of fuch a broken difappointed - voyage as I have met with, that I - lrave dropped ar lait into fo glorious ' a work.
I difcovered a kind of rapture in his face, while he fpoke this to me; his eyes fparkled like fire, his face glowed, and his colour came and went as if he had been falling into fits: in a word, he was fired with the joy of being embarked in füch a work. I paufed a confiderable while before I could tell what to fay to him ; for I was really furprized to find a man of fuch fincerity and zeal, and carried out in his zeal beyond the ordinary rate of men, not of his profeffion only, but even of any profeffion whatfoever: but after I had confidered it a while, I afked him ferioufly, if he was in earneft, and that he would venture on the fingle confideration of an attempt on thole poor people, to be locked up in an unplanted ifland for perhaps his life; and, at laft, might not know whether he fhould be able to do them any good or not.
He turned fhort upon me, and afked me, what I called a venture. 'Pray, ' Sir,' faid he, ' what do you think I - confented to go in your flip to the - Eait-Indies for?' - Nay,' faid I, ' that I know not, unlefs it was to 6 preach to the Indians.' - ${ }^{6}$ Doubt-- lefs it was,' faid he; ' and do you 6 think, if I can convert thefe feven and - thirty men to the faith of Chrift, it is - not worth my time, though I fhould - never be fetched off the ifland again? - Nay, is it not infinitely of more 6. worth to fave fo many fouls, than - my life is, or the life of twenty more - of the fame profeffion? Yes Sir . fays he, ' I would give Chrift and the - bleffed Virgin thanks all my days, if - I could be made the leaft happy inftru6 ment of faving the fouls of thefe poor - men, thongh I was never to fet my foot 6 off this ifland, or fee my native coun-- try any more. But, fince you will ' honour me,' fays he, ' with putting - me into this work, (for which I will - pray for you all the days of my life) I have one humble petition to you befides, -6 What is that ? raid I. 'Why,' fays he, 'it is, - that you will leave your man Friday f with me to be my interpreter to them, D $\mathrm{d} z$

6 and
them; viz. what neceffary things I had provided for them, and how they were diftributed, which they were fenfible of, and very thankful for; I began to talk to them of the fcandalous life they led, and gave them a full account of the notice the clergyman had already taken of it; and, arguing how unchriftian and irreligious a life it was, I firft afked them, if they were married men or batchelors. They foon explained their condition to me, and fhewed me that two of them were widowers, and the other three were fingle men or batchelors. I arked them, with what confcience they could take thefe women, and lie with them, take there women, and lal with them,
as they had done, call them their wives, and have fo many children by them, and not be married lawfully to them.

They all gave me the anfwer that I expected; viz. that there was nobody to marry them ; that they agreed before the governor to keep them as their wives; and to keep them, and own them, as their wives; and they thought, as things ftood with them, they were as legally married as if they had been married by a parfon, and with all the formalities in the world.
I told them, that no doubt they werf married in the fight of God, and were bound in confcience to keep them as their wives; but that the laws of men being otherwife, they might pretend they were not married, and fo defert the poor women and children hereafter; and that their wives, being poor defolate women, friendlefs and moneylefs, would have no way to help themfelves. I therefore told them, that unlefs I was affured of their honeft intent, I could do nothing for them but would take care that what I did fhould be for the women and children, without them; and that unlefs they would give fome affurances that they would marry the wornen, I could not think it was convenient they fhould continue together as man and wife; for that it was both fcandalous to men and offenfive to God, who they could not think would blefs them if they went on thus.
All this paffed as I expęted; and they told me, efpecially Will Atkins, who feemed now to fpeak for the reff, that they loved their wives as well as if they had been born in their own na-
tive country, and would not leave them upon any account whatever; and they did verily believe their wives were as virtuous, and as modeft, and did, to the utmoft of their fkill, as much for them, and for their children, as any women could poffibly do; and they would not part with them on any afcount. And William Atkins, for his own particular, added, if any man would take him away, and offer to carry him home to England, and make him captain of the beft man of war in the navy, he would not go with him, if he might not carry his wife and children with him; and if there was a clergyman in the fhip, he would be married to her now with all his heart.
This was juft as I would have it. The prieft was nat with me at that moment, but was not far off: fo, to try him farther, I told him, I had a clergyman with me, and, if he was fincere, I would have him married the next morning; and bade him confider f it, and talk with the reft. He faid, as for himfelf, he need not confider of it at' all; for he was very ready to do it, and was glad I had a minifter with me; and he believed they would be all willing alfo. I then told him, that my friend, the minifter, was a Frenchman, and could not fpeak Englifh; but that I would act the clerk between them. He never fo much as afked me whether he was a Papilt or Proteftant; which was, indeed, what I was afraid of. But, I fay, they never enquired about it. So we parted. I went back to my clergyman; and Will Atkins went in to takk with his companions. I defired the French gentleman not to fay any thing to them, till the bufinefs was thorough ripe; and I told him what anfwer the men had given me.

Before I went from their quarter, they all came to me, and told me they had been confidering what I had faid; that they were very glad to hear I had a clergyman in my company; and they were very willing to give me the fatisfaction I defired, -and to be formally marvied as foon as I pleafed; for they were far from defiring to part from their wives; and that they meant nothing but what was very honeft when they chofe them. So I appointed them to meet me the next morning; and that, in the mean time, they
frould let their wives know the meaning of the marriage-law; and that it was not only to prevent any fcandal, but alfo to oblige them, that they fiould not forfake them, whatever might happen.

The, women were eafily made fenble of the meaning of the thing, and were very well fatisfied with it, as, indeed, they had reafon to be; fo they failed not to attend all together at my apartment the next morning, where I brought out my clergyman. And though he had not on a minitter's gown, after the manner of England, or the habit of a prieft, after the manner of France; yet having a black veft, fomething like a caffock, with a farh round it, he did not look very unlike a minifter; and as for his language, I was interpreter.

But the ferioufnefs of his behaviour to them, and the foruples he made of marrying the women, becaule they were not baptized and profeffed Chriltians, gave them an exceeding reverence for his perfon; and there was no need after that to enquire whether he was a clergyman or no.

Indeed I was afraid nis fcruple would have been carried fo far, as that be would not have married them at all not have mate I ; nay, notwithitanding all 1 was able to fay to him, he refifted me, though modeftly, yet very fteadily; and at laft refufed abfolutely to marry them, unlefs he had firft talked with the men, and the women too. And though, at firft, I was a little backward to it, yet at laft I agreed to it with a good will, perceiving the fincerity of his defign.
When he came to them, he let them When he came to the in, them know, that I had acquainted him with their circumftances, and with the pre fent defign : that he was very willing to perform that part of his function, and marry them, as I had defired; but that, before he could do it, he mult take the liberty to talk with them. He told them, that in the fight of all different men, and in the fence of the laws of fociety, they had lived all this while in an open adultery ;' and that it was true, that nothing but the confenting to marry, or effectually feparating them from one another now, could put an end to it; but there was a difficuley in it too, with refpect to a difficulty in it 100 , wims of Chriftian matrimon, which the laws of Chriftian matrimony, which he was not fully fatisfied about; viz.
that of marrying one that is a profefled Chriftian to a favage, an idolater, and a heathen, one that is not baptized; and yet that he did not fee, that there was time left for it, to endeavour to perfuade the women to be baptized, or to profefs the name of Chrift, whom they had, he doubted, heard nothing of $2_{2}$ and without which they could not be baptized.

He told me, he doubted they were but indifferent Chriftians themfelves; that they had but little knowledge of God or his ways; and therefore he could not expect, that they had faid much to their wives on that head yet; but that unlefs they would promife him to ufe their endeavours with their wives, to perfuade them to become Chriftians, and would, as well as they could, inftruct them in the knowledge and belief of God that made them, and belief of God that made them, deemed them, he could not marry them; for he would have no hand in joining Chriftians with favages; nor was it confiftent with the principles of the Chriftian religion; and was, indeed, exprefsly forbidden in God's law.
They heard all this very attentively, and I delivered it very faithfully to them from his mouth, as near his own words as I could, only fometimes adding forething of my own, to convince them how juft it was, and how I was of his mind: and I always very faithfully dittinguifhed between what I faid from my ielf, and what were the clergyman's words. They told me, it was very true what the gentleman had faid, that they were but very indifferent Chriftians themfelves, and that they had never talked to their wives about religion. 'Lord, Sir;' fays Will Atkins, 'how fhould we - teach them religion? Why, we know - nothing ourfelves. And befides, Sir, ${ }^{2}$ faid he, • hould we go to talk to - them of God, and Jefus Chrift, and - heaven and hell, it would be to make - them laugh at us, and afk us what 6 we believe ourfelves. And if we - fhould tell them, we believe all the - things that we fpeak of to them; © fuch as of good people going to hea-- ven, and wicked people to the devil; 6 they would afk us, where we intend-- ed to go ourfelves, who believe all sthis, and yet are fuch wicked fel-- Lows as we indeed are. Why, Sir,'
faid Will, ' it is enough to give them - a furfeit of religion at firft hearing. - Folks muft have fome religion them-- felves, before they pretend to teach "other people, - Will Atkins, faid I to him, 'though I am afraid what - you fay has too much truth in it, 6 yet can you not tell your wife that - the is in the wrong? That there is - a God, and a religion better than - a God, and a religion better than

- her own; that her Gods are idols; - that they can neither hear nor fpeak; - that there is a great Being that made - all things, and that can deftroy all - that he has made; that he rewards - the good, and punifhes the bad; that - we are to be judged by him, at laft, f for all we do here? You are not - fo ignorant, but even nature itfelf - will teach you, that all this is true; 6 and I am fatisfied you know it all to 6 be true, and believe it yourfelf.

That's true, Sir,' faid Atkins; - but with what face can I fay any - thing to my wife of all this, when fhe - will tell me immediately it cannot - be true?
' Not true,' faid I; ' what do you ' mean by that ?'- 'Why, Sir,' faid he, ' The will tell me it cannot be true, - that this God (I Ball tell her of) can be juft, or can punifh, or re6 ward, fince I am not punifhed and - fent to the devil, that have been fuch - a wicked creature as fhe knows I Ghave been, even to her and to every - body elfe; and that I mould be fuf-- fered to live, that have been always - acting fo contrary to what I mulf tell - her is good, and to what I ought to ' have done.'

Why truly, Atkins,' faid I, ' I 6 am afraid thou fpeakeft too much ' truth.' And with that I let the clergyman know what Atkins had faid; for he was impatient to know. ' O !' faid the prieft,' tell him there is one thing will make him the beft mini${ }^{6}$ Aer in the world to his wife; and - that is repentance; for none teach - repentance like true penitents. He 6 wants nothing but to repent ; and - then he will be fo much the better - qualified to influct his wife; he will - then be able to tell her, that there is 6 not only a God, and that he is the © juft rewarder of good and evil, but - that he is a merciful Being, and, - with infinite goodnefs and long-fuf6 fering, forbears to punifh thooe that

- offend; waiting to be gracious, and - willing not the death of a finner, but - rather that he fhould return and live; - that he often fuffers wicked men to - go on a long time, and even referves - damnation to the general day of re6 tribution. That it is a clear evi-- dence of God, and of a future ftate, - that righteous men receive not their - 'reward, or wicked men their punifh6 ment, till they come into another 6 world; and this will lead him to - teach his wife the doctrine of the - refurrection, and of the laft judg-- ment. Let him but repent for him-- felf, he will be an excellent preach-- er of repentance to his wife.

I repeated all this to Atkins, who looked very ferious all the while, and who, we could eafily perceive, was more than ordinarily affected with it: when being eager, and hardly fuffering me to make an end, 'I knew all - this, Mafter,' fays he, 'and a great - deal more; but I ha'n't the impu-- dence to talk thus to my wife; when - God, and my own confcience knows, 6 and my wife will be an undeniable 6 evidence againft me, that I have liv-

- ed as if I had never heard of a God, - or a future ftate, or any thing about s it: and to talk of my repenting, 6 alas!' (and with that he fetched a deep figh; and I could fee that tears flood in his eyes) ' it is paft all that with me.'- Paft it ! Atkins,' faid I, ' what doft thou mean by that ?' -- I know well enough what I mean, - Sir,' fays he; 'I mean, it is too - late; and that is too true.?

I told my clergyman, word for word, what he faid. The poor zealous prieft (I muit call him fo; for be his opinion what it will, he had certainly a moft fingular affection for the good of other men's fouls; and it would be hard to think he had not the like for his own: I fay, this zealous affectionate man) could not refrain tears alfo. But, recovering himfelf, he faid to me, 'Afk him but one queftion, Is E. he eafy, that it is too late; or is he - troubled, and wifhes it were not fo? I put the queftion fairly to Atkins; and he anfwered with a great deal of paffion, how could any man be eafy in a condition that certainly muft end in eternal defruction : that he was fax from being eafy; but that,
on the contrary, he believed it would one time or other ruin him.

- What do you mean by that ?’ faid I. Why, he faid, he believed he fhould, one time or another, cut his own throat, to put an end to the terror of it.
The clergyman fhook his head, with a great concern in his face, when I told him all this; but turning quick to me upon it, faid, ' If that be his cafe, you may affure him it is not too late; Chrift will give him repentance. But pray;' fays he, 'explain this to him, That as no man is faved but by Chrift, and the merit of his paffion procuring Divine Mercy for him, how can it be too late for any man to receive mercy? Does he think he is able to fin beyond the power or reach of Divine Mercy? Pray tell him, there may be a time when provoked Mercy will s no longer ftrive, and when God may 'refufe to hear; but that it is never 6 too late for men to afk mercy: and we that are Chrift's fervants are commanded to preach mercy at all times, 6 in the name of Jefus Chrift, to all - thofe that fincerely repent; fo that ' it is never too late to repent."
I told Atkins all this, and he heard me with great earneftnels; but it feemed as if he turned off the difcourfe to the reft; for he faid to me, he would go and have fome talk with his wife. So he went out a while, and we talked to the reft. I perceived they were all ftupidly ignorant as to matters of religion, much as I was when I went rambling away from my father; and yet that there were none of thems backward to hear what had been faid; and all of them ferioufly promifed that they would talk with their wives about it, and do their endeavour to perfuade them to turn Chriftians.
The clergyman fmiled upon me when I reported what anfwer they gave, but faid nothing a good while; but, at laft, fhaking his head, 'We - that are Chrilt's fervants, fays he, - can go no farther than to exhort 6 and inftruct; and when men com6 ply, firbmit to the reproof, and pro-- mife what we afk, it is all we can - do ; we are bound to accept their-- good words. But, believe me, Sir', faid be, ' whatever you may have
- known of the life of that man you 6 call William Atkins, I believe he is - the only fincere convert among them; - I take that man to be a true peni-- tent : I won't defpair of the reft;
- but that man is perfectly fruick with
- the fenfe of his paft life; and I doubt 6 not but when he comes to talk - religion to his wife, he will talk - himfelf effectually into it ; for at-- tempting to teach others, is fome-- times the beft way of teaching our-- felves. I knew a man,' added he, - who, having nothing but a fummary - notion of religion himfelf, and be-- ing wicked and profligate to the - laft degree in his life, made a tho-- rough reformation of himfelf by la6 boaring to convert a Jew. And if - that poor Atkins begins but once to - talk ferioufly of Jefus Chrift to his * wife, my life for it, he talks him-- felf into a thorough convert, makes

6 himfelf a penitent; and who knows 6 what may follow !?
Upon this difcourfe, however, and their promifing, as above, to endeavour to perfuade their wives to embrace Chriftianity, he married the other three couple ; but Will Atkins and his wife were not yet come in. After this, my clergyman, waiting a winle, was curious to know where Atkins was gone; and turnino to me, fays he - I intreat you, Sir, let us walk out - of your labyrinth here, and look; - I dare fay we fhall find this poor - man, fomewhere or other, talking 6 ferioully with his wife, and teaching 6 her already fomething of religion. I began to be of the fame mind: fo we went out together; and I carried him a way which none knew but myfelf, and where the trees were fo thick fet, as that it was not eafy to fee through the thicket of leaves, and far harder to fee in than to fee out. When coming to the edge of the wood, I faw Atkins, and his tawny favage wife, fitting under the fhade of a bufh, very eager in difcourle. ftopped fhort, till my clergyman came up to me; and then, having thewed him where they were, we ftood and looked very fteadily at them a good while.

We obferved him very earneft with her, pointing up to the fun, and to every quarter of the heavens; then down to the earth, then out to the fea, then to
himfelf, then to her, to the woods, io the trees. 'Now,' fays my clergyman, you fee my words are made good. The man preaches to her; mark him! Now he is telling her, that our God has made him, and her, and the heavens, the earth, the fea, the 6 woods, the trees, \&c.'- 'I believe 6 he is,' faid I. Immediately we perceived Will Atkins fart up upon his feet, fall down upon his knees, and lift up both his hands. We fuppofed he faid fomething, but we could not hear him; it was too far for that. He did not continue kneeling half a minute; but comes and fits down again by his wife, and talks to her agaith. We perceived then the woman very attentive; but whether fhe faid any thing or no we could not tell. While the poor fellow was upon his knees, I could fee the tears run plentifully down my clergyman's cheeks; and I could hardly forbear myfelf. But it was a great affliction to us both, that we were not near enough to hear any thing that paffed between them.

Well, however, we could come no nearer, for fear of difturbing them : fo we refolved to fee an end of this piece of ftill converfation; and it fpoke loud enough to us without the help of voice. He fat down again, as I have faid, clofe by her, and talked again earnefly to her; and two or three times we could fee him embrace her paffionately; another time we faw him take out his handkerchief and wipe her eyes, and then kifs her again, with a kind of tranfport very unufual. And after feveral of thefe things, we faw him on a fudden jump up again, and lend her his hand to help her up, when immediately, leading her by the hand a ftep or two, they both kneeled down together, and continued fo about two minutes.

My friend could bear it no longer, but cries out aloud, "Saint Paul! Saint ‘ Paul! behold he prayeth!' I was afraid Atkins would hear him ; therefore I intreated hitn to with-hold himfelf a while, that we might fee an end of the fcene, which, to me, I mult confeis, was the molt affecting, and yet the moft agreeable, that ever I faw in my life. Well, he ftrove with himfelf, and contained himfelf for a while, but was in fuch raptures of joy, to think that the poor heathen woman

Was become a Chiftian, that he was not able to contain himfelf: he wept feveral times; then throwing up his ${ }^{2}$ hands, and croffing his breaft, faid over feveral things ejaculatory, and by way of giving God thanks for fo muraculous a teftimony of the fuccefs of our endeavours; fome he fpoke foftly, and I could not well hear ; others audibly; fome in Latin, fome in French; then two or three times the tears of joy would interrupt him, that he could not fpeak at all. But I begged that he would compofe himfelf, and let us more narrowly and fully obferve what was before us; which he did for a time, and the fcene was not ended there yet; for, after the poor man and his wife were rifen again from their knees, we obferved he ftood talking ftill eagerly to her, and we obferved by her motion that the was greatly affected with what he faid, by her frequent lifting up her hands, laying her hand to her breaft, and fuch other poftures as ufually exprefs the greateft ferioufnefs and attention. This continued about half a quarter of an hour, and then they walked away too; fo that we could fee no more of them in that fituation.

I took this interval to talk with my clergyman; and firf, I told him, I was glad to fee the particulars we had both been witneffes to; that though I was hard enough of belief in fuch cafes, yet that I began to think it was all very fincere lere, both in the man and his wife, however ignorant they both might be; and I hoped fuch a beginning would have yet a more happy end. 'And who knows,' faid I, ' but 6 thefe two may in time, by inftruc6 tion and example, work upon fome 6 of the others?' - 'Some of them ! faid he, turning quick upon me, 'aye, - upon all of them. Depend upon it, if

- thofe two favages (for he has been - but little better, as you relate it) 6 fhould embrace Jefus Chrift, they 6 will never leave till they work upon 6 ail the reft; for true religion is na6 turally communicative ; and he that 6 is once made a Chriftian, will never 6 leave a Pagan behind him, if he can 6 help it. I owned it was a moll Chriftian principle to think 10, and a teftimony of a true zeal, as well as a generous heart in him. 'But, my
'friend,' faid I, 'will you give me
$\&$ liberty to ftart one difficulty here? I
- cannot tell how to object the leaft thing againft that affectionate concern which you flew for the turning the poor people from their paganifm to the Chriftian religion. But how does this comfort you, while -thefe people are, in your account, out of the pale of the catholick church; without which you believe there is no falvation; fo that you efteem thefe but hereticks fill; and, for other reafons, as effectually loft as 'the Pagans themfelves?'
To this he anfwered with abundance of candour and Chriftian cha rity, thus : 'Sir, I am a catholick of the Roman church, and a prieft of 4 the order of St. Benedict, and I em-- brace all the principles of the Ro6 man faith; but yet, if you will be-- lieve me, and this I do not fpeak in compliment to you, or in refpect to my circumftances, or your civilities ; I fay, neverthelefs, I do not look upon you, who call yourfelves Reformed, without fome charity. I dare not fay, though 1 know it is our opimion in general, yet, I dare not fay, that you cannot be faved; will by no means limit the mercy of Chrift, fo far as to think that he cannot receive you into the bofom of his church, in a manner to us imperceivable, and which it is imporfible for us to know ; and I hope you have the fame charity for us : I pray daily for your being all reftored to Chrilt's church, by whatfoever methods He , who is All-wife, is pleafed to direct. In the mean time, fure you will allow it to confift with me, as a Roman, to diftinovilh far between a Protefant and a g. far between a Protetant and a Pagan ; between one that calls on Tefus Cbrift, though in a way which I do not think is according to the true faith; and a favage, a barba rian, that knows no God, no Chrift, s ino Redeemer at all; and if you are f not within the pale of the Catholick 6 church, we hope you are nearer bef ing reftored to it than thofe that know nothing at all of God, or his 6 church. I rejoice, therefore, when I f fee this poor man, who you fay has © been a profligate, and almoft a mur-- den a profiggate, and almork a derer, kneel down and pray to Jeus Chrift, as we fuppofe he did, though - not fully enlightened; believing that \& God, from whom every fuch work
- proceeds, will fenfibly touch his 6 heart, and bring him to the further
- knowledge of the truth in his own

6 time; and if God fhall influence this - poor man to convert and inftruct - the ignorant favage his wife, I can - never believe that he fhall be caft - away himfelf. And have I not rea-

6 fon then to rejoice, the nearer any are

- brought to the knowledge of Chrift, 6 though they may not be brought - quite home into the bofom of the 6 catholick church juft at the time 6 when I may defire it ; leaving it to - the goodnefs of Chrift to perfect his E work in his own time, and his own - way ? Certainly I would rejoice if - all the favages in America were 6 brought, like this poor woman, to - pray to God, though they were to 6. be all Proteftants at firft, rather than - they fhould continue Pagans and - Heathens; firmly believing, that he - who had bettowed that firft light 6 upon them, would farther illumi-
6 nate them with a beam of his hea-- venly grace, and bring them into - the pale of his church when he - fhould fee good.?

I was aftonifhed at the fincerity and temper of this truly pious Papit, as much as I was oppreffed by the power of his reafoning: and it prefently occurred to my thoughts, that if fuch a temper was univerfal, we might he all Catholick Chriftians, whatever church or particular profeffion we joined to or joined in ; that a fpirit of charity would foon work us all up into right principles; and, in a word, as he thought, that the like charity would make us all Catholicks, fo I told him, I believed, had all the members of his church the like moderation, they would foon be all Proteftants. And there we left that part, for we never difputed at all.

However, I talked to him another way; and, taking him by the hand, ' My friend;' faid I, ' I wiih all the - clergy of the Roman church were - bleffed with fuch moderation, and 6 an equal fhare of your charity. I 6 am entirely of gour opinion \% but I 6 muft tell you, that if you fhould - preach fuch doctrine in Spain or Italy,

- they would pat you into the Inqui-- fition.'
' It may be fo,' faid he; 'I know -6 not what they might do in Spain and

6 Italy; but I will not fay they would 6 be the better Chriftians for that fe-- verity; for I am fure there is no he-- refy in too much charity.

Well, as Will Atkins and his wife were gone, our bufinefs there was over: fo we went back our own way ; and when we came back, we found them waiting to be called in. - Obferving this, I afked my clergyman, if we fhould difcover to him that we had feen him under the bufl, or no; and it was his opinion we fhould not; but that we fhould talk to him firft, and hear what he would fay to us. So we called him in alone, nobody being in the place but ourfelves ; and I began with him thus.
' WillAtkins,' faid I, 'pr'ythee what - education had you? What was your - father ?
W. A. A better man than ever I Thall be. Sir, my father was a clergyman.
R. C. What education did he give you ?
W. A. He would have taught me well, Sir; but I defpifed all education, inftruction, or correction, like a beaft as I was.
R. C. It is true, Solomon fays, 'He 6 that defpifeth reproof is brutith.'
W. A. Ay, Sir, I was brutifh indeed; I murdered my father. For God's fake, Sir, talk no more about that, Sir; I murdered my poor father!

Priest. Ha! a marderer !
[Here the prieft ftarted (for I in -
terpreted every word as he fpoke
it) and looked pale. It feems, he believed that Will had really killed his own father.]
R. C. No, no, Sir; I do not underftand him fo. -Will Atkins, explain yourfelf; you did not kill your father, did you, with your own hands? W. A. No, Sir; I did not cut his throat; but I cut the thread of all his comforts, and thortened his days; I broke his heart by the moft ungrate ful unnatural return for the molt tender affectionate treatment that ever fad ther gave or child conld receive.
R. C. Well, I did not afk you about your father, to extort this confeffion s I pray God give you repentance for it, and forgive you that, and all your other fins; but I afked you, becaufe I fee, that though you have not much
learning, yet you are not fo ignorant in order, as you directed me, to make as fome are, in things that afe good that you have known more of religion a great deal than you have practifed.
W. A. Though you, Ir, did not extort the confeffion that I make about my father, confcience does; and whenever we come to look back upon our lives, the fins againft our indulgent parents are certainly the firft that touch us; the wounds they make, lie deepeff; and the weight they leave, will lie heavieft upon the mind, of all the fins we can commit.
R. C. You talk too feelingly and fenfible for me, Atkins: I cannot bear it.
W. A. You bear it, mafter! I dare fay you know nothing of it.
R. C. Yes, Atkins; every fhore, every hill, nay, I may fay, every tree in this ifland is witnefs to the anguifh of my foul for my ingratitude and bafe ufage of a good tender father; a father much like yours, by your defription; and I murdered my father as well as you, Will Atkins; but think, for all that, my repentance is hort of yours too by a great deal.
[I would have faid more, if I could have reftrained my paffions; but I thought this poor man's repentance was fo much fincerer than mine, that I was going to leave off the difcourfe, and retire : for I was furprized with what he faid; and thought, that inftead of my going about to teach and inftruct him, the man was made a teacher and inftructor to me, in a molt furprizing and unexpected manner.]
I laid all this before the young clergyman, who was greatly affected with it, and faid to me, ' Did I not fay, - Sir, that when this man was con6 verted, he would preach to us all? I 6 tell you, Sir, if this one man be - made a true penitent, here will be 6 no need of me; he will make Chrifstians of all in the ifland. But ing a little compofed myfelf, I renewed my difcourfe with Will Atkins.
' But, Will,' faid I, 'how comes 6 the fenfe of this matter to touch you © juft now?
W. A. Sir, you have fet me about a work that has ftruck a dart through my very foul: I have been talking about God and religion to my wife,
a Chriftian of her; and fhe has preached fuch a fermon to me, as I fhall never forget while I live.
R. C. No, no; it is not your wife has preached to you; but when you were moving religious arguments to her, confcience has flung them back upon you
W. A. Ay, Sir, with fuch a force as it is not to be refifted.
R. C. Pray, Will, let us know what paffed between you and your wife; for I know fomething of it already?
W. A. Sir, it is impoffible to give you a full account of it; I am too full to hold it, and yet have no tongue to exprefs it; but let her have faid what the will, and though I cannot give you an account of it, this I can tell you of it, that I refolve to amend and reform my life.
R. C. But tell us fome of it. How did you begin, Will? For this has been an extraordinary cafe, that is certain; fhe has preached a fermon, indeed, if the has wrought this upon you.
W. A. Why, I firft told her the nature of our laws about marriage, and what the reafons were, that men and women were obliged to enter into fuch compacts, as it was neither in the power of one on other to break; that otherwife order and juftice could not be maintained, and men would run from their wives, and abandon children, mix confufedly with one nother, and neither families be another, and neither families be kept entire, nor inheritances be fettled by a legal defcent.
R. C. You talk like a civilian, Will Could you make her underftand what you meant by inheritance and families?. They know no fuch thing among the favages, but marry any how, without any regard to relation, confanguinity, or family; brother and fifter; nay, as I have been told, even the father and daughter, and the fon and the mother.
W. A. I believe, Sir, you are mifinformed; and my wife affures me of the contrary, and that they abhor it z perhaps, for any farther relations, they may not be fo exact as we are; but the tells me, they never touch one another in the near relations you fpeak pf.

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

R. C. Well, what did the fay to what you told her?
W. A. She faid, the liked it very well, and it was much better than in her country.
R. C. But, did you tell her what marriage was ?
W. A. Av, ay; there began all our dialogue. I afked her, if fhe would be married to me our way? She afked me, what way that was? I told her, marriage was appointed of God; and here we had a ftrange talk together, indeed, as ever man and wife had, I believe.
[N. B. This dialogue between Will Atkins and his wife, as I I took it down in writing, juft, after he told it me, was as follows:]
WIfe. Appointed by your God! Why, have you a God in your coun-
try? W. A. Yes, my dear; God is in every country.
WIFE. No your God is my country; my country have the great old Benamuckee god.
W. A. Child, I am very unfit to fhew you who God is; God is in heaven, and made the heaven and the earth, the fea, and all that in them is.
Wife. No makee de earth ; no you God makee de earth; no makee my country.
[Will Atkins laughed a little at her expreffion of God not making her country.]
WIFE. No laugh : why laugh me? This no ting to laugh.
[He was juttly reproved by his wife;
for fhe was more ferious than he at firft.]
W. A. That's true, indeed; I will not laugh any more, my dear.

Wife, Why you fay, you God make all?
W. A. Yes, child, our God made the whole world, and you, and me, and all things; for he is the only true God; there is no God but he; he lives for ever in heaven.

Wife. Why you no tell me long ago?
W. A. That's true, indeed; but I have been a wicked wreteh, and have not only forgotten to acquaint thee with any thing before, but have lived without God in the world myfelf.
WIFE. What have you de great God in your country, you no know.
him? No fay O! to him? No do gooc! ting for him? That no impoffible!
W. A. It is too true though, for all that: we live as if there was no God in heaven, or that he had no power on earth.
Wife. But why God let you do fo? Why he no make you good live?
W. A. It is all our own fault.

Wife. But you fay me, he is great, much great, have much great power; cän make kill when he will; why he no makee kill when you no ferve him? No fay 0 ! to him? No be good mans !
W. A. That is true ; he might frike me dead, and I ought to expeet it; for I have been a wicked wretch, that is true; but God is merciful, and does not deal with us as we deferve.

Wife. But then, do nót you tell God tankee for that too?
W. A. No, indeed: I have not thanked God for his mercy, any more than 1 have feared God for his power.
WIFe. Then you God no God; me no think, believe he be fuch one; great much power, ftrong; no makee kill you, though you makee him much angry. A. What!-will my wicked life hinder you from believing in God! What a dreadful-creature am I! And what a fad truth is it, that the horrid lives of Chrifians hinders the converfion of heathens.

WIFE. How me tink you have great much God up there, and yet no do well, no do good ting? Can he tell? Sure he no tell what you do.
[She points up to heaven.]
W. A. Yes, yes, he knows and fees all things; he hears us fpeak; fees what we do, knows what we think, though we do not fpeak.

Wife. What! he no hear you fwear, curfe, fpeak the great damn? W. A. Yes, yes, he hears it all.

WIFE. Where be then the muchee great power ftrong
W. A. He is merciful ; that is all we can fay for it: and this proves him to be the true God; he is God and not man; and therefore we are not confumed.
[Here, Will Atkins told us, he was ftruck with horror, to think how he could tell his wife fo clearly, that God fees, and hears, and knows the fecret thoughts of the n.w. the lecret thoughts of theart?
heart, and all that we do ; and yet that he had dared to do all the vile things he had done.]
Wife. Merciful! what you call dat?
W. A. He is our father and maker; and he pities and fpares us.

WIFE. So then he never makee kill, never angry when you do wicked ; then he no good himfelf, or no great able.
W. A. Yes, yes, my dear; he is infinitely good, and infinitely great, and able to punih too; and fometimes, to hew his juftice and vengeance, he lets thy his anger to deitroy finners, and make examples; many are cut off in their fins.

Wife. But no makee kill you yet, Then he tell you, may, be, that he no makee you kill; fo you make de bargain with him, you do bad ting, he no be angry at you when he be angry at other mans ?
W. A. No, indeed, my fins are all prefumptions upon his goodnefs; and he would be infinitely juit if he deftroyed me, as he has done other men.

WIFE. Well, and yet no kill, no makee you dead! What you fay to him for that? You no tell him tankee for all that too!
W. A. I am an unthankful, ungrateful dog, that is true.
Wife. Why he no makee you much good better? You fay he makee you?
W. A. He made me as he made all the world; it is I have deformed myfelf, and abufed his goodnels, and have made myfelf an abominable wretch.
Wife. I wifh you makee God know me; I no makee him angry; I no do bad wicked ting.
[Here, Will Atkins faid, his heart
funk within him, to hear a poor un-
taught creature defire to be taught
to know God; and he luch a wicked wretch that he could not fay one word to her about God, but what the reproach of his own carriage would make molt irrational to her to believe; nay, that already the could not believe in God, becaufe he that was fo wick ed was not deftroyed.
W. A. My dear, you mean you winh I could teach you to know God
not God to know you; for he knows you already, and every thought in your heart.
Wife. Why then he know what I fay to you now; he know me wifh to know him. How fhatl me know who makee me?
W. A. Poor creature ! he mulf teach thee; I cannot teach thee: I'll pray to him to teach thee to know him; and to forgive me that I am unworthy to teack thee.
[The poor fellow was in fuch an agony at her defiring him to make her know God, and her wifhing to know him, that, he faid, he fell down on his knees before her, and prayed to God to enlighten her mind with the faving knowledge of Jefus Chrift, and to pardon his fins, and accept of his being the unworthy inftrument of initructing her in the principles of religion; after which he fat down by her again; and their dialogue wenton.
N.B. This was the time when we faw him kneel down and lift up: his hands.]
Wife. What you put down the knee for? What you hold up the hand for? What you fay? Who you fpeak to? What is that?
W. A. My dear, I bow my knees in token of my fubmiffion to him that made me. I faid O to him, as you call it, and as you fay your old men do to their idol Benamuckee; that is, I prayed to him.

Wife. What you fay $O$ to him for?
W. A. I prayed to him to open your eyes and your underfanding, that you may know him, and be accepted by him.

Wife. Can he do that too?
W, A. Yes, he can; he can do all things.

Wife. But he no hear what you fay?
W. A. Yes, he has bid us pray to, him; and promifed to hear us.

WIfe. Bid you pray? When he bid you? How he bid you? What ! you hear him fpeak?
W. A. No, we do not hear him fpeak; but he has revealed himfelf many ways to us.
[Here he was at a great lofs to make
her underfand, that God had re
vealed

## ROUINSON CRUSOE

vealed himfelf to us by his word, and what his word was; but at laft he told her thus.]
W. A. God has fpoken to fome good men in former days, even from heaven, by plain words; and God has infpired good men by his Spirit; and they have written all his laws in a book. WIFE. Me no underftand that. Where is book ?
W. A. Alas ! my poor creature, I have not this book; but I hope I frall one time or other get it for you to read it.
[Here he embraced her with great ffection, but with inexpreffible grief that he had not a bible.]
Wife. But how you makee me now that God teachee them to write that book?
W. A. By the fame rule that we know him to be God.

Wife. What rule, what way you know?
W. A. Becaufe he teaches and ommands nothing but what is good, righteous, and holy; and tends to make us perfeetly good as well as perfeetly happy; and becaufe he forbids and commands us to avoid all that is wicked, that is evil in itfelf, or evil in it's confequences.
Wife. That me would underfand, that me fain fee; if he reward all good thing, punifh all wicked thing, he teachee all good thing, forbid all wicked thing, he make all thing, he give all thing; he hear me when I fay O to him, as you go to do juft now ; he makee me good, if I wifl be good; he fpare me, no makee kill me when I no be good; all this you fay he do ; yes, he be great God; me take, think, believe him be great God; me fay O to him too, with you, my dear.
[Here, the poor man faid, he could forbear no longer; but, raifing her up, made her kneel by him; and he prayed to God aloud, to infruct her in the knowledge of himfelf by his Spirit; and that by fome good providence, if poffible, the might fome time or other come to have a Bible, that fhe might read the word of God, and be taught by him to know him.
This was the time that we faw him lift her up by the hand, and
faw him kneel down by her, as above.]
They had feveral other difcourfes, feems, after this, too long to fet down here; and particularly the made him promife, that fince he confeffed his own life had been a wicked abominable courfe of provocation againft God, that he would reform it, and not make God angry any more, left fould make him dead, as fhe calla it, and then fhe fhould be left alone, and never be taught to know this God better; and left he fhould be miferable, as he had told her wicked men fhould be after death.

This was a ftrange account, and very affecting to us both, but particularly the young clergyman : he was indeed wonderfully furprized with it; but under the greateft affliction imaginable, that he could not talk to her; that be could not fpeak Englifh to make her underitand him; and as fhe foke but very broken Englifh, he could not underftand her. However, be turned himfelf to me, and told me, that he believed there mult be more to do with this woman than to marry her. I did not underftand him at firft, but at length he explained himfelf ; $^{\prime}$ viz. that the ought to be baptized.
I agreed with him in that part readily, and was for going about it prefently. 'No, no; hold, Sir,' faid he; enthy. No, would have her baptized though I merns yet I murt opferve, - by all means, yet 1 mum oblerve, 6 that Will Atkins, her hulband, has, 6 indeed, brought her in it wonderfu! - manner to be willing to embrace a ${ }^{6}$ religious life; and has given her ' juft ideas of the being of a God, of his power juftice, and mercy; yet I defire to klow of him if he has faid to know of $\rightarrow$ Chis I and of the datvation of finners; s the nature of faith in him, and the ' redemption by him; of the Holy Spis rit, the refurrection, the lalt judg-- ment, and a future ftate."

I called Will Atkins again, and afked him; but the poor fellow fell immediately into tears, and told us, he had faid fomething to her of all thofe thinos, but that he was himfelf fo wicked a creature, and his own confcience fo reproached him with his horrid ungodly life, that he trembled at the apprehenfions that her know-
ledge of him fhould leffen the attention the fhould give to thofe things, and make her rather contemn religion than receive it. But he was affured, he faid, that her mind was fo difpofed to receive due impreflions of all thofe things, hat if I would but difcourfe with he the would make it appear to my fatisfaction, that my labour would not be lolt upon her.
According I called her in, and placins myfelf as interpreter between my eligious prieft and the woman, I in treated him to begin with her: but fure fuch a fermon was never preached by a Popilh prieft in thele latter ages of the world! and, as I told him, I thought he had all the zeal, all the knowledge, all the fincerity of a Chrif tian, without the errors of a Roman Catholick; and that I took him to be fuch a clergyman as the Roman bifhops were before the church of Rome affumed foiritual fovereignty over the confciences of men.
In a word, he brought the poor woman to embrace the knowledge of Chrift, and of redemption by him; not with wonder and aitonimment only, as the did the firt notions of a God, but with joy and faith, with an affection, and a furprizing degree of underitanding, fcarce to be imagined, much lefs exprefled; and at her own requeft the was baptized.

When he was preparing to baptize her, I intreated him that he would perform that office with fome caution, that the man might not perceive he was of the Roman church, if poffible; becaufe of otherill confequences which might attend a difference among us in that very religion which we were inftucting the other in. He told me, that as he had no confecrated chapel, nor proper things for the office, I fhould fee he would do it in a manner that I fhould not know by it that he ras a Roman Catholick myself, if I had not known it before: and fo he did; for faying only fome words over to himfelf in Latin, which I could not underitand, he poured a whole difh full of water upon the woman's head, pronouncing in French very loud, ' Mary, (which was the name her hurband defired me to give her, for I was her godfather) 'I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Gholt.' So that none could
know any thing by it what religion he was of. He gave the benediction afterwards in Latin; but either Will Atkins did not know but it was in French, or elfe did not take notice of it at that time.
As foon as this was over, he married them. And after the marriage was over, he turned himfelf to Will Atkins, and in a very affectionate manner exhorted him, not only to perfevere in that good difpofition he was in, but to fupport the convictions that were upon him, by a refolution to reform his life; told him it was in vain to fay he repented, if he did not forfake his crimes; reprefented to him how God had honoured him with being the inftrument of bringing his wife to the knowledge of the Curiftian religion; and that he fhould be careful he did not difhonour the grace of God; and that if he did, he would fee the heathen a better Chriltian than him felf; the favage converted, and the inftrument calt away.

He faid a great many good things to them both, and then recommended them, in a few words, to God's goodnefs, gave them the benedi\&tion again, I repeating every thing to them in Englifh: and thus ended the ceremony. I think it was the moft pleafant agreeable day to me that ever I paffed in my whole life.
But my clergyman had not done yet; his thoughts hung continually upon the converfion of the thirty-feven avages; and fain he would have ftaid upon the ifland to have undertaken it; but I convinced him, ift. That his undertaking was impracticable in itfelf; and, zdly, That, perhaps, I would put it into a way of being done, in his abfence, to his fatisfaction. Of which by and by.
Having thus brought the affairs of the ifland to a narrow compafs, I was preparing to go on board the fhip, when the young man, whom I had taken out of the Spanifh thip's company, came to me, and told me, he underftood I had a clergyman with mes and that I had caufed the Englifmmen to be married to the favages, whom they called wives; that he had a match too, which he delired might be finimed before I went, between two Chrif tians; which, he hoped, would not be difagreeable so me.

I kneve

I knew this muft be the young woman who was his mother's fervant, for there was no other Chriftian woman on the ifland; fo I began to perfuade him not to do any thing of that kind rafhly, or becaufe he found himfelf in this folitary circumftance. I reprefented, that he had fome confiderable fubftance in the world, and good friends, as I underfood by himfelf, and by his maid alfo; that the maid was not only poor, and a fervant, but was unequal to him, the being twenty-fix or twenty-feven years old, and he not above feventeen or eighteen; that he might, very probably, with my affiftance, make a remove from this wildernefs, and come into his own country again; and that then it would be a thoufand to one but he would repent his choice; and the diflike of that circumfance might be difadvantageous to both. I was going to fay more, but he interrupted me, fmiling, and told me, with a great deal of modefty, that I miftook in my gueffes; that he had nothing of that kind in his thoughts, his prefent circumftances being melancholy and difconfolate enough; and he was very glad to hear, that I had thoughts of putting them in a way to fee their own country again; and that nothing fhould háve fet him upon ftaying there, but that the voyage I was going was exceeding long and hazardous, and would carry him quite out of the reach of all his friends; that he had nothing to defire of me, but that I would fettle him in fome litile property in the ifland where lie was; give him a fervant or two, and fome few neceffaries, and he would fettle himfelf here like a planter, waiting the good time when, if-ever I returned to England, I would redeem him, and hoped I would not be unmindful of him when I came to Englaird; that he would give me fome letters to his friends in London, to let them know how good I had been to him, and what part of the world, and what circumftances I had left him in. And he promifed me, that whenever I redeemed him, the plantation, and all the improvements he had mäde upon it, let the value be what it would, thould be wholly mine.

His difcourfe was very prettily delivered, confidering his youth; and was the more agreeable to me, becaufe
he told me pofitively the match was not for himfelf. I gave him all pof. fible affurances, that if I lived to come fafe to England, I would deliver his letters, and do his bufnefs effectually; and that he might depend I would never-forget the circumftances I left him in; but ftill I was impatient to know who was the perfon to be married: upon which he told me, it was my Jack of all Trades and his maid Sufan.
I was molt agreeably furprized when he named the match; for, indeed, $\mathbf{I}$ had thought it very fuitable. The character of that man I have given already; and as for the maid, the was a very honeft, modeft, fober, and relit gious young woman; had a very good fhare of fenfe; was agreeable enough in her perfon; fpoke very handfomely, and to the purpofe; always with decency and good manners, and not backward to fpeak, when any thing required it, or impertinently forward to fpeak when it was not her bufinefs; very handy and houfewifely in any thing that was before her; an excellent manager, and fitted indeed to have been governels to the whole ifland; fhe knew very well how to behave herfelf to all kind of folks the had about her, and to better, if the had found any there.
The match being propofed in this manner, we married them the fame day; and, as I was father at the altar, as I may fay, and gave her away, fo I gave her a portion; for I appointed her and her hurband a handfome large fpace of ground for their plantation; and, indeed, this match, and the propofal the young genteman made to me, to give him a fmall property in. the ifland, put me upon parcelling it out among them, that they might not quarrel afterwards about their fitua tion.

This fharing out the land to them I left to Will Atkins; who, indeed, was now grown a moft fober, grave, managing fellow, perfectly reformed, exceeding pious and religious, and, as far as I may be allowed to fpeak pofitively in fuch a cafe, I verily believe, was a true, fincere penitent.

He divided things fo juifly, and fo much to every one's fatisfaction, that they only defired one general writing under my hand for the whole; which

I caufed to be drawn up, and figned and fealed to them, fetting out the bounds and fituation of every man's plantation, and teftifying, that I gave them thereby, feverally, a right to the whole poffeffion and inheritance of the refpective plantations or farms, with their improvements, to them and their heirs; referving all the reft of the ifland as my own property, and a certain rent for every particulai: plantation, after eleven years, if I or any one from me, or in my name, came to demand it, producing an attefted copy of the fame writing.
As to the government and laws among them, I told them I was not capable of giving them better rules than they were able to give themfelves; only made them promife me, to live in love and good neighbourhood with one another. And fo I prepared to leave them.
One thing I mult not omit; and that is, that being now fettled in a kind of commonwealth among themfelves, and having much bufinefs in hand, it was but odd to have feven and thirty Indians live in a nook of the ifland, independent, and indeed unemployed; for, excepting the providing themfelves food, which they had difficulty enough in fometimes, they had no manner of bufinefs or property to manage. I propofed therefore to the governor Spaniard, that he fhould go to them with Friday's father, and propofe to them to remove, and either plant for themfelves, or take them into their feveral families as fervants, to be maintained for their labour, but without being abfolute flaves; for I would not admit them to make them flaves by force by any means, becaufe they had their liberty given by capitulation, and, as it were, articles of furrender, which they ought not to break.

They moft willingly embraced the propofal, and came all very chearful long with him. So we allotted them land and plantations, which three or four accepted of, but all the reft chofe to be employed as fervants in the feveral families we had fettled; and thas my colony was in a manner fettled as follows. The Spaniards poffeffed my original habitation, which was the capital city, and extended their plantation all along the fide of the brook, which. made the creek that I have fo often defcribed, as far as my bower;
and as they increafed their culture, it went always eaftward: the Englifh lived in the north-eaft part, where Will Atkins and his comrades began, and came on fouthward and fouth-weft, towards the back part of the Spaniaids ; and every plantation had a great addition of land to take in, if they found occafion; fo that they need not joitle one another for want of room.
All the weft end of the ifland was left uninhabited, that if any of the favages fhould come on fhore there, only for their ufual cuftomary barbarities, they might come and go; if they difturbed nobody; nobody would difturb them: and no doubt but they were ften and went asvay' again; for I never heard that the planters were ever attacked or difturbed any more.

It now came into my thoughts; that I had hinted to my friend the clergyman, that the work of converting the favages might, perhaps; be fet on foot in his abfence, to his fatisfaction: and I told him, that now I thought it was put in a fair way; for the favages being thus divided among the Chrifians, if they would but every one Chriftians, if they would but every one of them do their part with thofe which came under their hands, I hoped it might have a very good effect.
He agreed prefently in that, "If, faid he, 'they will do their part ; buit " how fhall we obtain that of them ?? I told him, we would call them all together, and leave it in charge with them, or go to them one by one, which he thotight beft; fo we divided it ; he to fpeak to the Spaniards; who it ; he 11 Paifs and I to the Englifh were all Pap who were all Proteftants; and we recommended it earneftly to them, and made them promife, that they would never make any diftinetion of Papit or Proteftant, in their exhorting the favages to turn Chriftians; but teach them the general knowled ge of the true God, and of their Saviour Jefus Chrift; and they likewife promifed us, that they would never have any differences or difputes one with another, about religion.

When I came to Will Atkins's houfe, (if I may call it fo, for fuch a houfe, or fuch a piece of bafket-work, I believe, was not ftanding in the world again; I fay, when I came thither) found the young woman I have menfound the young woman if have tioned
tioned above, and Will Atkins's wife, were become intimates; and this prudent, religious young woman, had perfected the work Will Atkins had begun; and though it was not above four days after what I have related, yet the new baptized favage woman was made fuch a Chriftian, as I have feldom heard of any like her in all my obfervation or converfation in the world.

It next came into my mind, in the morning, before I went to them, that among all the needful things I had to leave with them, I had not left a Bible; in which I thewed myfelf lefs confidering for them, than my good friend the widow was for me, when the fent me the cargo of 1001 . from Lifbon where the packed up three Bibles and a Prayer-book. However, the good woman's charity had a greater extent than ever the imagined; for they were referved for the comfort and inftruction of thofe that made much better ufe of them than I had done.
I took one of the Bibles in my pocket, and when I came to William Atkins's tent or houfe, I found the young woman, and Atkins's baptized wife, had been difcourfing of religion together; (for William Atkins told it me with a great deal of joy.) I afked, if they were together now, and he faid, 'Yes. So I went into the houfe, and he with me, and we found them together very earneft in difcourfe. 'O, Sir!' fays William Atkins, 6 when God has finners to re* concile to himfelf, and aliens to 6 bring home, he never wants a mef-- fenger : my wife has got a new in-- fluctor; I knew I was unworthy, 6 as I was uncapable of that work. - That young woman has been fent 6 hither from heaven; fhe is enough * to convert a whole ifland of favages.' The young woman blufhed, and rofe up to away, but I defired her to fit fill. I told her fhe had a good work upon her hands, and I hoped God would blefs her in it.

We talked a little, and I did not perceive they had any book among: them, though I did not afk; but I put my hand in my pocket, and pulled out my Bible. 'Here,' faid I to Atkins, 'I have brought you an affittant, that, perhaps, you had not before. The man was fo confounded, that he
was not able to fpeak for fome time: but, recovering himfelf, he takes it with both his hands, and turning to his wife, 'Here, my dear,' fays he; ' did s not I tell you, our God, though he 6 lives above, could hear what we 6 faid! Here is the book I prayed for, 6 when you and I kneeled down under 6 the bufh; now God has heard us, and ' fent it.' When lie had faid thus, the man fell into fuch tranfports of 2 paffionate joy, that between the joy of having it, and giving God thanks for it, tears ran down his face like a child that was crying.

The woman was furprized, and was like to have run into a miftake that none of us were aware of; for the firmly believed God had fent the book upon her hurband's petition. It is true, that providentially it was fo, and might be taken fo in a confequent fenfe; but I believe it would have been no difficult matter, at that time, to have perfuaded the poor woman to have believed, that an exprefs meffenger came from heaven on purpofe to bring that individual book; but it was too ferious a matter, to fuffer any delufion to take place: fo I turned to the young woman, and told her, we did not defire to impofe upon the new convert in lrer firft and more ignorant underftanding of things ; and begged her to explain to her, that God may be very properly faid to anfwer our petitions, when, in the courfe of his providence, fuch things are, in a particular manner, brought to pafs as we petitioned for; but we do not expect returns from Heaven in a miraculous and particular manner; and that it is our mercy it is not fo.

This the young woman did afterwards effectually; fo that there was I affure you, no prieftcraft ufed here and I hould have thought it one of the molt unjuftifiable frauds in the world, to have had it fo. But the fur world, to have had it 10. But the furprize of joy upon Will Atkins is really not to be expreffed; and there, we may be fure, was no delufion. Sure no man was ever more thankful in the world for any thing of it's kind than he was for this Bible; and, I believe, never any man was glad of a Bible from a better principle; and though he had been a moft profligate creature, defperate, headftrong, out-
rageous, furious, and wicked, to a great degree ; yet this man is a ftanding rule to us all for the well inftructing children; viz. that parents hould never give over to teach and inftruct, or ever defpair of the fuccefs of their endeavours, let the children be ever fo obftinate, refractory, or, to appearance, infenfible of inftruction; for, if ever God in his providence touches the confciences of fuch, the force of their education returns upon them, and the early inftruction of parents is not loft, though it may have been many years laid alleep; but, fome time or other, they may find the benefit of it.

Thus it was with this poor man : however ignorant he was, or divefted of religion and Chritian knowledge, he found he had fome to do with now more ignorant than himfelf; and that the leaft part of the inftruction of his good father, that could now come to his mind, was of ufe to him.

Among the reft, it occurred to him, he faid, how his father ufed to infift much upon the inexpreffible value of the Bible; the privilege and bleffing of it to nations; families, and perfons; but he never entertained the leaft notion of the worth of it till now ; when, being to talk to heathens, favages, and barbarians, he wanted the help of the written oracle for his affiftance.

The young woman was very glad of it alfo, for the prefent occation, though fhe had one; and fo had the youth on board our fhip, among the goods which were not yet brought on thore. And now, having faid fo many things of this young woman, I cannot omit telling one ftory more of her and myfelf, which has fomething in it very informing and remarkable.

I have related to what extremity the poor young woman was reduced; how her miftrefs was ftarved to death, and did die on board that unhappy fhip we met at fea; and how the whole Thip's company being reduced to the aft extremity, the gentlewoman and her fon, and this maid, were firft hardly ufed as to provifions, and at laft totally neglected and ftarved; that is to fay, brought to the laft extremity of hunger.
One day, being difcourfing with her upon the extremities they fuffered, I aiked her if the could defcribe, by
what fhe felt, what it was to ftarve, and how it appeared. She told me, fhe believed fhe could; and the told her tale very diftinctly thus :

- Firft, Sir;' faid fhe, 'we had for - fome days fared exceeding hard, and - fuffered very great hunger ; but now, - at laft, we were wholly without food - of any kind, except fugar, and a - little wine, and a little water. The 6 firf day, after thad received no food - at all, I found myfelf towards even; ing, firft empty and fickifh at my - ftomach; and nearer night, mightily 6 inclired to yawning, and 位epy. I 6 Jaid down on a couch in the great cabin to fleep, and flept about three cabin to rep, s hours, and awaked a little refremed, - having taken a glafs of wine when - I laid down. After being about three - hours awake, it being about five $60^{\prime}$ clock in the morning, I found my-- felf empty, and my fomach fickifl - again,- and laid down again ; but - could not fleep at all, being very - faint and ill : and thus I continu-- ed all the fecond day, with a ftrange ( variety; firft hungry, then fick again 6 with reachings to vomit. The fecond - night, being obliged to go to bed 6 again without any food more than a - draught of fair water, and being - affeep, I dreamed I was at Barb - does, and that the market ar bar - tily, a - tily ftocked with provifions; that I bought fome for my miftrefs, and went and dined very heartily.
- I thought my ftomach was as full 6 after this, as it would have been 6 after, or at a good dinner; but when - I waked, I was exceedingly funk in my fpirits, to find myfelf in the extremity of famine. The laft glafs 6 of wine we had I drank, and put - fugar into it, becaufe of it's having - fome firit to fupply nourifhment; 6 but there being no fubitance in the ftomach for the digefting office to s work upon, I found the only effect - of the wine was, to raife difagree6 able fumes from the ftomach into the - head; and I lay, as they - fupid and fenfelefs, ary told me, trupid and lenielefs, as one drunk - for fome time.

The third day in the morning, 6 after a night of frange and con-- fuled inconfiftent dreams, and ra-- ther dozing than fleeping, I awaked, - ravenous and furious with hunger ; 6 and I queftion, had not my under-
sageous

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

- flanding returned and conquered it; - I fay, I queftion whether, if I had
- been a mother, and had had a little
- child with me, it's life would have
- been fafe or no.
s This lafted about three hours;
- during which time I was twice rag-

6 ing mad as any creature in Bedlam,
e as my young mafter told me, and as

- he can now inform you.
- In one of thefe fits of lunacy or diftraction, whether by the motion - of the fhip, or fome flip of my foot,
- I know not, I fell down, and fruck
- my face againft the corner of a pal-
- let-bed, in which my miftrefs lay;
s and with the blow the blood gumed
6 out of my nofe; and the cabin-boy
6 bringing me a little bafon, I fat
- down, and bled into it a great deal;
- and as the blood ran from me, I
- came to myfelf; and the violence of - the flame, or the fever I was in, a-
- bated, and fo did the ravenous part

6 of the hunger.

- Then I grew fick, and reached to e vomit, but could not; for I had - nothing in my ftomach to bring up.
- After I had bled fome time, I fwoon-
z ed, and they all believed I was dead;
< but I came to myflelf foon after, and
- then had a molt dreadful pain in my
- ftomach, not to be defcribed; not

6 like the cholick, but a gnawing eager - pain for food; and, towards night, 6 it went off with a kind of earneft - withing or longing for food; fome< thing like, as I fuppofe, the long-- ing of a woman with child. I took - another draught of water, with fu-- gar in it, but my fomach loathed s the fugar, and brought it all up - again: then I took a draught of wa-- ter without fugar, and that flayed - with me; and laid me down upon - the bed, praying moft heartily that - it would pleafe God to take me a-- way; and compofing my mind in - hopes of it, I flumbered a while; and - then waking, thought myfelf dying,

6 being light with vapours from an - empty ftomach. I recommended my 6 foul to God, and earneftly wifhed - that fomebody would throw me into 6 the fea.
6 All this while my miftrefs lay by - me, juft, as I thought, expiring ; but - bore it with much more patience than - I, and gave the laft bit of bread the - had to her child, my young mafter,
who would not have taken it, but The obliged him to eat it; and, I believe, it faved his life.

Towards the morning I flept again : and firft, when I awaked, I fell into a violent paffion of crying; and after that, had a fecond fit of violent hunger, fo that I got up ravenous, and in a moft dreadful condition. Had my miftrefs been dead 6 as much as I loved her, I am cer' tain I fhould have eaten a piece of her flef with as much relifh, and as unconcerned, as ever I did the flefh of any creature appointed for food and once or twice I was going to bite my own arm. At laft, I faw the bafon in which was the blood I had bled at my nofe the day before; ran to it, and fwallowed it with fuch - hafte, and fuch a greedy appetite s as if I had wondered nobsidy ha 6 taken it before, and afraid it thould be taken from me now.
6 Though after it was down, the 6 thoughts of it filled me with horror, 6 yet it checked the fit of hunger'; and 6 I drank a draught of fair water, and - was compofed and refrefhed for fome - hours after it. This was the fourth - day ; ar 1 . ni ; and thus Iheld it till towards night, when, within the compais of three hours, I had all thefe feveral - circumftances over again, one afier ' another; viz, fick, fleepy, eagerly - hungry, pain in the ftomach, then ravenous again, then fick again, then lunatick, then crying, then ravenous again, and fo every quarter of an hour ; and my ftrength wafted exceedingly. At night I laid me down, having no comfort, but in the hope that I fhould die before morning.
All this night I had no fleep, but the hunger was now turned into a 6 difeafe, and I had a terrible cholick and griping ; wind, inftead of food, ' having found it's way into the bowels; and in this condition I lay till © morning, when I was furprized a little with the cries and lamentations 6 of my young mafter, who called out 6 to me, that his mother was dead. S I lifted mylelf up a little, for I had 6 not ftrength to rife, but found the 6 was not dead, though the was able to give very little figns of life.

- I had then fuch convulfions in - my fomach, for want of fome fuftenance, that I cannot defcribe them
s with fuch frequent throes and pangs - of appetite, that nothing but the tor6 tures of death can imitate. And 6 this condition I was in when I heard - the feamen abovecry out, "A jump " a fail!" and hale diftracted.
- about as if they were det from the - I was not able to get of fuch lefs - bed, and my miltrels much that 6 and my mafter was expiring; fo we - thought he lad the cabin-door, or - could not open what it was that 6 get any account, whoution, nor - occafioned fuch a combut with the 6 had we any converlation days, they - Mip.s company for two cays, - having told us fing to eat in the fhip. - ful or any tho fterwards, they
- And they told us a dead.
- thought we had been dead

6 It was this dreadful condition we were in, when you were fent to - fave our lives. And how youl found 6 us, Sir , you know as well as I, and - better too.

This was her own relation, and is ach a diftinct account of farving to death, as, I confefs, I never met with, and was exceeding entertaining to me. I am the rather apt to believe it to be a true account, becauke the part of it; me an account of a good part ond though I muft own not fo dird the fo feelingly as his maid; and the raher, becaufe, it feems, his mother fed him at the price of her own life: but the poor maid, though her conititution being ftronger than that of her miltres, who was in years, and a wearer with man too, the might ftruggle harder with it; I fay, the poor mard might be fuppofed to feel the extremity fomething fooner than her miftrefs, who might be allowed to keep the laft-bits fomething longer than the parted wan as to relieve the maid. No quettion, as the cafe is here related, if our thip, or fome other, had not fo providentially met with them, a few dives, unlefs they have ended all thei had prevented it by eatig, $k$, would and even that, as their cale little while, have ferved them but a leagues from they being five hundflibility of relief, any land, or the maculous manner other than in the this by way. it happened. But tho fition of things I return to my
among the people.
And firlt, it is to be obferved here,
that, for many reafons, I did not think fit to let them know any thing of the floop I had framed, amono them; thought of fetting up amo for 1 found, at leatt at my ing, fuch feeds of divimon had I fet them, that I faw it plainly, up the floop, and very light difgult, they would, upon very away from have feparated, and gone away turned one another, or perhaps have pirates, and fo made the ifand a den of thieves, infead of a plantation of ber and religious people, as I intended it to be; nor did I leave the two pieces of brafs cannon that I had on board, or the two quarter-deck guns that my or the two quarter-dordinary, for the nephew took I thought they had
 enough to qualify that fhould invade war againit any that to fet them up them; but I was no to encoure for an offenfive war, or that them to go abroad to auld only bring which, in the end, would ohemfelves ruin and deftruction upons. I referved and all their undere, and the guns for the lloop, therefother way, as I thall their rervice another
obferve in it's place.
I have now done with circumftances, left them allorifing condition, and and in a board my flip again the fifth day of May, having been five and twenday of them; and, as they ty days amonged to fay upon the were all relolvede to remove them, I ifland till I came fome farther relief promifed to rend if I could poffibly from the Branity; and particularly, find an opportunity; anem cattle; I promifed to fend them cows : for fuch as fheep, hogs, and cows: for as to the two cows and calves which I brought from England, we had been bliged, by the length of our voyage, to kill them at fea, for want of hay to feed them.
The next day, giving them a falute of five guns at parting, we fet fail, of five guns at pay of All-Saints, and ared in about twenty-two in the Brazis, days; meetry inat about thre our pafiage, but thid beino becalmed, days after we failed, betg be the and the current fetting itrong into a E. N.E. rumning, as it were, finto bay or gulph on the land fide, we were driven fomething out of our courfe; and once or twice our cried,
cried, 'Land to the weftward!' but whether it was the continent, or iflands, we could not tell by any means.
But the third day, towards evening, the fea fmooth, and the weather calm, we faw the fea, as it were, covered, towards the land, with fomething very black, not being able to difcover what it was; but, after fome time, our chief mate going up the main fhrouds a little way, and looking at them with a perfpective, cried out it was an army. I could not imagine what he meant by an army, and fpoke a little haftily, calling the fellow a fool, or fome fuch word. ' Nay, Sir,' fays he, 'don't - be angry, for it is an army, and a fleet too; for I believe there are a - thoufand canoes, and you may fee them paddle along, and they are com 6 ing towards us too apace, and full of men.
I was a little furprized then, indeed, and fo was my nephew the captain; for he had heard fuch terrible ftories of them in the ifland; and having never been in thofe feas before, that he could not tell what to think of it, but faid two or three times we fhould all be devoured. I muft confefs, confidering we were becalmed, and the current fet ftrong towards the fiore, I liked it the worfe. However, I bade him not be afraid, but bring the fhip to an anchor as foon as we came fo near as to know that we mult engage them.

The weather continued calm, and they came on apace towards us ; fo I gave orders to come to an anchor, and furl all our fails. As for the favages, I. told them they had nothing to fear from them but fire ; and therefore they fhould get their boats out, and faten them, one clofe by the head, and the other by the ftern, and man them both well, and wait the iffue in that pofture. This I did, that the men in the boats might be ready, with fheets and buckets, to put out any fire thefe favages might endeavour to fix upon the outfide of the hip.

In this pofture we lay by for them, and in a little while they came up with us; but never was fuch a horrid fight feen by Chriftians. My mate was much miltaken in his calculation of their number; I mean, of a thoufand canoes; the moft we could make of them when they came up being about a hundred and twenty-fix, and a great many,
of them too; for fome of them had fix teen or feventeen men in them, fome more, and the leaft fix or feven.
When they came nearer to us, they feemed to be ftruck with wonder and aftonifhment, as at a fight which they had, doubtlefs, never feen before; nor could they at firft, as we afterwards underitood, know what to make of us. They came boldly up, however, very near to us, and feemed to go about to row round us; but we called to our men in the boats not to let them come too near them.
This very order brought us to an engagement with them without our defigning it; for five or fix of their large canoes came fo near our long-boat, that our men beckoned with their hands to them to keep back; which they underitood very well, and went back; but at their retreat about five hundred arrows came on board us from thofe boats; and one of our men in the long-boat was very much wounded.

However, I called to them not to fire by any means; but we handed down fome deal boards into the boat, and the carpenter prefently fet up a kind of a fence, like wafte-boards, to cover them from the arrows of the favages, if they fhould fhoot again.

About an hour afterwards they came all up in a body aftern of us, and pretty near, fo near that we could eafily difcern what they were, though we could not tell their defign. I eafily found they were fome of my old friends, the fame fort of favages that I had been ufed to engage with; and in a inttle time more they fowed fomewhat farther out to fea, till they came directly broadfide with us, and then rowed down ftraight upon us, till they came fo near, that they could hear us fpeak. Upon this I ordered all my men to keep clofe, left they fhould fhoot any more arrows, and make all our guns ready; but, being fo near as to be within hearing, I made Friday go out upon the deck, and call out aloud to them in his language, to know what they meant ; which accordingly he did. Whether they underftood him or not, that I knew not; but as foon as he had called to them, fix of them, who were in the foremoft or nigheft boat to us, turned their canoes from us, and ftooping down, fhewed us
their
their naked backfides; juft as if, in could, taking but little care to fave Englifh, (faving your prefence) they thofe whofe boats were iplit or fooiled had bid us kifs -. Whether this was a defiance or challenge we knew not ; or whether it was done in mere contempt, or a fignal to the reft; but immediately Friday cried out, they were going to fhoot; and unhappily for him (poor fellow) they let fly about three hundred of their arrows; and, to my inexpreffible grief, kill ed poor Friday, no other man be ing in their fight. The poor fellow was fhot with no lefs than three arrows, and about three more fell very nigh him ; fuch unlucky markfmen nigh were.
they were.
I was enraged with the lofs of my old fervant, the companion of all my forrows and folitudes, that I immediately ordered five guns to be loaded with fmall thot, and four with great ; and gave them fuch a broadfide as they had never had in their lives before to be fure.
They were not above half a cable's length off when we fired; and our gunners took their aim fo well, that three or four of their canoes were overfet, as we had reafon to believe, by one fhot only.

The ill manners of turning up their bare backfides to us gave us no great offence; neither did 1 know for cers tain, whether that which wong us, for the greaterfood fo by them or might be undertood in return, I had only not; therefore, in four or five guns with powder only, which I knew would fright them fufficiently. But when they fhot at us directly with all the fury they were capable of, and efpecially as they had killed my poor Friday, whom I fo entirely loved and valued, and who indeed to wel deferved it, I not only had been juftified before God and'man, but would have been very glad, if I could, to have overfet every canoe there, and drowned every one of them.

I can neither tell how many we killI, or how many we wounded, at this broadfide; but fure fuch a fright and hurry never was feen among fuch a multitude. There were piteend overfet teen of their canoes ming ; the reft, frighted out of their wits, fooured away as faft as they
with our fhot; fo I fuppofe that there all gone.
were many of them loit; and our men took up one poor fellow fwimming for his life, above an hour after they were

Our fmall fhot from our cannon mult needs kill and wound a great many : but, in fhort, we never knew any thing how it went with them; for they fled fo faft, that in three hours, they hed cold we could not fee above three or four ftraggling canoes nor did we ever fee the reft any more for a breeze of wind fpringing up the fame evening, we weighed and fet fail for the Brazils.

We had a prifoner indeed, but the creature was fo fullen, that he would neither eat nor fpeak, and we all fancied he would farve himfelf to death : but I a way to cure him; for I but 1 took a him and turn him into the long-boat, and make him believe they would tofs him into the fea gain, and fo leave him where they found him, if he would not fpeak; nor would that do, but they really did throw him into the fea, and came away from him; and then he followed them, for he fwam like a cork, and called to them in his tongue, though they knew not one word of what they kowever, at laft, they in aid. However, and they took him in again, and then he began to be they fhould drown him.
We thould drown him.
We were now under fail again; but I was the mof difconfolate creature alive for want of my man Friday, and would have been very glad to have gone back to the ifland, to have taken one of the reft from thence for my occafion, but it could not be; fo we went on. We had one prifoner, as I have faid; and it was a long while hefore we could make him und white before we could make thine, any thing; but, in time, our men taught him fome Engliff, and he began to be a little tractable. Afterwards we enquired what country he came from, but could make nothing of what he faid; for his fpeech was fo odd, all gutterals, and ipoken in the throat in fuch a hollow and odd manner, that we could never form a word from him; and we were all of woid from, that they might fpeak that opinion, that well if they were gagged
language as was .


$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$ 8 8 5
as otherwife ; nor could we perceive that they had any occafion either for teeth, tongue, lips, or palate ; but formed their words jult as a huntinghorn forms a tune, with an open throat. He told us, however, fome time after, when we had taught him to Speak a little Englifh, that they were going with their kings to fight a great battle. When he faid kings, we afked him how many kings. He faid, there were five nation, (we could not make him underitand the plural $S$ ) and that they all joined to go againft two nation. We afked him, what made them come up to us. He faid, 'To 6 makee te great wonder look.' Where it is to be obferved, that all thofe natives, as allo thofe of Africa, when they learn Englifh, they always add two $e$ 's at the end of the words where we ufe one, and place the accent upon the laft of them, as makeé, takeé, and the like; and we could not break them of it; nay, I could hardly make Fciday leave it off, though at lalt he did.
And now I name the poor fellow once more, I mult take my laft leave of him. Poor honeft Friday! We buried him with all decency and folemnity poffible, by putting him into a coffin, and throwing him into the fea; and I caufed them to fire eleven guns for him. And fo ended the life of the moft grateful, faithful, honeft, and moft affectionate fervant, that ever man had.

We now went away with a fair wind for Brazil; and, in about twelve days time, we made land in the latitude of five degrees fouth of the line, being the north-eaftermoft land of all that part of America. We kept on S. by E. in fight of the fhore, four days, when we made the Cape St. Auguftine, and in three days came to an anchor off the Bay of All-Saints, the old place of deliverance, from whence came both my good and evil fate.

Never Thip came to this part that had lefs bufinefs than I had; and yet it was with great difficulty that we were admitted to hold the leaft correfpondence on flore: not my partner himfelf, who was alive, and made a great figure among them; not my two merchant trultees, nor the fame of my wonderful prefervation in the ifland, could obtain me that favour. But my
partner remembering that I had given five hundred moidores to the prior of the monaftery of the Auguftines, and three hundred and feventy-two to the poor, went to the monaftery, and obliged the prior that then was to goto the governor, and beg leave for me prefently, with the captain and one more, befides eight feamen, to come on fhore, and no more; and this upon condition abfolutely capitulated for, that we fhould not offer to land any goods out of the fhip, or to carry any perfon away without licence.
They were fo ftrict with us, as to landing any goods, that it was with extreme difficulty that I got on fhore three bales of Englifh goods, fuch as fine broad-cloths, ituffs, and fome linen, which I had brought for a prefent to my partner.
He was a very generous broad-hearted man, though (like me) he came from little at firft ; and though he knew not that I had the leaft defign of giving him any thing, he fent me on board a prefent of frefh provifions, wine, and fweetmeats, worth above thirty moidores, including fome tobacco, and three or four fine medals in gold. But I was even with him in my prefent, which, as I have faid, confifted of fine broad-cloth, Englifh ftuffs, lace, and fine Hollands. Alfo I delivered him about the value of rool. fterling, in the fame goods, for other ufes; and I obliged him to fet up the floop which I had brought with me from England, as I have faid, for the ufe of my colony, in order to fend the refrefhments I intended to my plantation.

Accordingly, he got hands, and finifhed the floop in a very few days, for the was already framed, and I gave the mafter of her fuch infructions as he could not mifs the place; nor did he mifs it, as I had an account from my partner afterwards. I got him foon loaded with the fmall cargo I had fent them; and one of our feamen, that had been on fhore with me there, offered to go with the floop, and fettle there, upon my letter to the governor Spaniard to allot him a fufficient quantity of land for a plantation; and giving him fome cloaths and tools for his planting-work, which he faid he underftood, having been an old planter in Maryland, and a buccaneer into the bargain.

I encouraged the fellow by granting all he defired; and, as an addition, I gave him the favage which we had taken prifoner of war, to be his flave, and ordered the governor Spaniard to give him his fhare of every thing, he wanted with the reft.
When we came to fit this man out, my old partner told me, that there was a certain very honeft fellow, a Brazi planter of his acquaintance, who had pllen into the dicpleafue of the church - I know not what the matter is with ' him,' fays he; 'but, on my con-- fcience, I think he is a heretick in - his heart, and he has been obliged to - conceal himfelf for fear of the inqui-- fition;' that he would be very glad of fuch an opportunity to make his efcape, with his wife and two daughters; and if I would let them go to the ifland, and allot them a plantation, he would give them a fmall fock to begin with; for the officers of the inquifition had feized all his effects and eftate, and he had nothing left but a little houf-hold-ftuff and two flaves. 'And,' adds he, 'though $I$ hate his principles, 6 yet I would not have him fall into - their hands ; for he will affuredly be - burnt alive if he does.'

I granted this prefently, and joined my Englifhman with them; and we concealed the man, and his wife and daughters, on board our fhip, till the floop put out to go to rea; and then (having put all their goods on board the floop fome time before) we put them on board the floop after fhe was got out of the bay.
Our feaman was mightily pleafed with this new partner; and their flock, indeed, was much alike rich in tools, in preparations, and a farm; but nothing to begin with but as above. However, they carried over with them (which was worth all the reft) fome materials for planting fugar-canes, with fome plants of canes; which he (I mean, the Portugal man) underftood very well.
Among the reft of the fupplies fent my tenants in the ifland, I fent them, by this floop, three milch cows and five calves, about twenty-two hogs among them, three fows big with pig, two mares and a ftone-horfe.
For my Spaniards, according to my promife, I engaged three Portugal wo-
men to go; and recommended it to them to marry them, and ufe them kindly. I could have procured more women, but I remembered, that the poor perfecuted man had two daughters, and there were but five of the Spaniards that wanted; the reft had wives of their own, though in another country.
All this cargo arrived fafe; and, as you may eafily fuppofe, very welcome to my old inhabitants, who were now (with this addition) between fixty and feventy people, befides little children; of which there were a great many. I found letters at London from them, all by way of Lifbon, when I came back to England, being fent back to the Brazils by this floop; of which I fhall take fome notice in it's place.

I have now done with my ifland, and all manner of difcourfe about it; and whoever reads the reft of my memorandums, would do well to turn his thoughts entirely from it, and expect to read only of the follies of an old man, not warned by his own harms, much lefs by thofe of other men, to beware of the like; not cooled by almoft forty years mifery and difappointments ; not fatisfied with profperity beyond expectation; not made cautious by affliction and diftefs beyond imitation

I had no more bufmers to co to the I had no more burmer go the Eaft-Indies, than a man at full liberty, and having committed no crime, has to go to the turnkey at Newgate, and defire him to lock him up among the prifoners there, and farve him Had I taken a fmall veffiel from Enoland and went directly to the iffand; had I loaded her, as I did the other veffel, with all the neceffaries for the plantation, and for my people; took a patent from the government here, to have fecured my property, in fubjection only to that of England, which, to be fure, I might have obtained; had I carried over cannon and ammunition, fervants, and people to plant, and taking poffefion of the place, fortified and frengthened it in the name of England, and increafed it with people, as I misht eafily have done; had I then fertled myfelf there, and fent the myell there, and fent a back loaden with good rice, as I might alio have done in fix months time, and ordered my friends to have fitted her out again for our fupply; had I done this,

## 234

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

and fayed there myfelf, I had, at leaft, aeted like a man of common fenfe : but I was poffeffed with a wandering fpirit, fcorned all advantages, pleafed myfelf with being the patron of thefe people I bad placed there, and doing people jeftick way, like an old patriarchal monarch; providing for them, as if I had been father of the whole family as well as of the plantation. But I never fo much as pretended to plant in the name of any government or nation, or to acknowledge any prince, or to call my people fubjects to any one nation more than another; nay, Inever foch as gave the place a name; but left it as I found it, belonging to no man, and the people under no difcipline or go vernment but my own; who, though I lat influence over them as father and benefactor, had no authority or power to act or command one way or other, farther than voluntary confent moved them to comply; yet even this, had I ftayed there, would have done well enough; but as I rambled from them, and came thither no more, the laft letters I had from any of them were by my partner's means, who afterwards fent another floop to the place, and who fent me word, though I had not the letter till five years after it was written, that they went on but poorly; were malcontent with their long ftay there; that Will Atkins was dead; that five of the Spaniards were come away; and that though they had not been much molefted by the favages, yet they had had fome fkirmifhes with them; that they begged of him to write to me, to think of the promife I had made to fetch them away, that they might fee their own country again before they died.

But I was gone a wild-goofe chace indeed; and they who will have any more of me, mult be content to follow me through a new wariety of follies, hardhips, and wild adventures; wherein the juftice of Providence may be duly obferved, and we may fee how eafily Heaven can gorge us with our own defires, make the ftrongett of our wifles to be our affliction, and punifh us moft feverely with thofe very things which we think it would be our utmoft happinefs to be allowed in.
Let no wife man flatter himfelf with the ftrength of his own judgment, as

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

if he was able to chufe any particular Itation of life for himelf. Man is a fhort-fighted creature, fees but a very little way before him; and as his parfions are none of his beft friends, fo his particular affections are generally his particular anfellors.

I fay this with refpect to the impeAus defrre I had from a youth to wander into the world; and how evident it now was, that this principle was preferved in me for my punifhment How it came on, the manner, ment. Hownce, and the conclufion of it, it is eafy to give you hiftorically, and with it's gort variety of partiand with it's utmott vand of Divine Providence, in thus permitting us to be hurried down the ftream of our own defires, are only to be underfood of thofe who can liften to the voice of Providence, and draw religious confequences from God's juftice, and their own miftakes.
Be it, had I bufinefs, or no bufinefs, away I went. It is no time now to enlarge any farther upon the reafon or abfurdity of my own conduct; but to come to the hiftory, I was embarked for the voyage, and the voyage I went.

I thall only add here, that my honeft and truly pious clergyman left me bere; a dip beiag ready to go to Lifbon, he akked me leave to go thither: being ftill, as he obferved, bound nebemg fill, as he oblerved, be ban ver to finifh any voyage he began. How happy had it been for me, if I had gone with him!
But it was too late now: all things Heaven appoints are beft. Had I gone with him, I had never had fo many things to be thankful for, and you had never heard of the fecond part of the Travels and Adventures of Robinfor Crufoe. So I muft leave here the fruitlefs exclaiming at myfelf, and go on with my voyage.

From the Brafils we made direstly away over the Atlantick Sea, to the Cape de Bonne Efperance, or, as we call it, the Cape of Good Hope; and had a tolerable good voyage, our courfe generally foutin eaft ; now and then a ftorm, and fome contrary winds. But my difafters at fea were at an end; my future rubs and ciols events were to befal me on fhore, that it might appear, the land was as well prepared to be our Icourge as the fea, when Hea-
ven, who directs the circumftances of things, pleafes to appoint it to be fo. Our fhip was on a trading voyage, and had a fupercargo on board, who was to direct all her motions after fle arrived at the Cape; only being limited to certain number of days for ftay, by charter-party, at the feveral ports the was to go to. This was none of my bufinefs, neither did I meddle with it at all ; my nephew, the captain, and the fupercargo, adjulting all thofe things between them, as they thought fit.

We made no ftay at the Cape, longer than was needful to take in frefh water, but made the beit of our way for the coalt of Coromandel. We were in deed informed, that a French man of war of fifty guns, and two large merchant flips, were gone for the Indies and as I knew we were at war with France, I had fome apprehenfions of them ; but they went their own way, and we heard no more of them.
I fhall not pefter my account, or the reader, with defcriptions of places, journals of our voyages, veridian difthe compafs, and the like; fuch as almoft all the hiftories of long navigation are full of, and which make the reading tirefome enough, and are perfectly unprofitable to all that read, except only to thofe who are to go to thofe places themfelves.

It is enough to name the ports and places which we touched at, and what occurred to us upon our paffing from one to another. We touched firt at the ifland of Madagafcar; where, though the people are fierce and treacherous, and, in particular, very well armed with lances and bows, which they ufe with inconceivable dexterity, yet we fared very well with them a while; they treated us very civilly; and, for fome trifles which we gave them, fuch as knives, fciffars, \&cc. they brought us eleven good fat bullocks, middling in fize, but very good in fleth; which we took in, partly for frefh provifions for our prefent spend ing, and the reft to falt for the Chip's

Wie.
We were obliged to ftay here for fome time, after we had furnifhed ourfelves with provifions; and I, that was always too curious to look into every
nook of the world wherever I came, was for going on fhore as often as I could. It was on the eaft fide of the ifland that we went on chore one evening; and the people, who, by the way, are very numerous, came thronging about us, and Aood gazing at us at a diftance. As we had traded freely with them, and had been kindly ufed, we thought ourfelves in no danger; but when we faw the people, we cut but when we faw the people, we cut three boughs out of a tree, and ftuck them up at a diftance from us, which, it feems, is a mark in that country, not only of truce and friend hhip, but, when it is accepted, the other fide fet up three poles or boughs alfo, which is a fignal that they accept the truce too; but then this is a known condition of the truce, that you are not to pafs beyond their three poles towards them, nor they come paft your thyee poles or bough toward you; fo that you are perfealy fecure within the thre perfectly fecure withm the three poles, and all the ipace between your poles and theirs is allowed, like a market, for free converfe, traffick and commerce. When you go thither, you mult not carry your weapons with you; and if they come into that fpace, they tick up their javelins and lances all at the firft poles, and come on unarmed; but if any violence is offered them, and the truce thereby broken, away they run to the poles, and lay hold of their weapons, and then the truce is their weap.
It happened, one evening, when we went on fhore, that a greater number of their people came down than ufual; but were all very friendly and civil. They brought with them reveral kinds of provifions, for which we satisfied of prowith fuch toys as we had; their women allo brought us milk and roots, and feveral things very acceptable to us, and all was quiet; and we made , a little tent or hut, of fome boughs us a little tent or lay on more all that of trees
I know not what was the occafion, but I was not fo well fatisfied to lie on fore as the refl; and the boat lying more as the relt; ant a ftone's cait from at the land, wise of the care of her, 1 made ane fome boughs of on thore; and get alfo in the boat, I trees to cover fpread the fail on toard, under the coboat, and lay on board,

## 238

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

one. Jaek faid he would; and another followed, and then another : and, in a word, they all left me but one, whom, with much difficulty, too, I perfraded to flay. So the fupercargo and I, with one man, went back to the hoat, where, I told them, we would fay for them, and take care to take in as many of them as fhould be left; for I told them, it was a mad thing they were going about, and fuppofed molt of them would run the fate of Thomas Jeffries.
They told me, fike feamen, they wrould warrant it they would come off again; and they would take care, \&cc. So away the went. I intreated them to confider the thip and the voyage; that their lives were not their own, and that they were intrutted with the voyage in fome meafure; that if they mifcarried, the fhip might be lof for want of their help; and that they could not anfwer it to God and man. I faid a great deal more to them on that head, but I might as well have talked to the main-matt of the fhip: they were mad upon their journey; only they gave me good words, and begged I would not be angry; faid they would be very cautious, and they did not doubt but they would be back again in about an hour at fartheft; for the Indian town, they faid, was not above half a mile off: though they found it above two miles before they got to it.
Well, they all went away, as above; and though the attempt was defperate, and fuch as none but madmen would have gone about, yet, to give them their due, they went about it warily as well as boldly. They were gallantly armed, that is true; for they had every man a fufil or mufquet, a bayonet, and every man a piltol; fome of them had broad cutlaffes, fome of them langers, and the boatfwain and two more had pole-axes : befides all which aliey had among them thrteen handgrenadoes. Bolder fellows, and better provided, never went about any wicked work in the world.
When they weat out, their chiof defign was plunder; and they were in mighty hopes of finding gold there; but a circumftance which none of them was awase of, fet them on fire with revenge, and made devils of them all. When they came to the few Indian houfes, which they thought had been
the town, which were not above half a mile off, they were under a great difappointment; for there were not above twelve or thirteen houfes; and where the town was, or how big, they knew not : they confuited therefore what to do, and were fome time before they could refolve; for if they fell upon thefe, they muft cut all their throats ; and it was ten to one but fome of them might efcape, it being in the night, though the moon was up; and if one efcaped, he would run away and raife all the town, fo they fhould have a whole army upon them. Again, on the other hand, if they went away, and left thofe untouched (for the people were all afleep) they could not tell which way to look for the town.

However the laft was the beft advice ; fo they refolved to leave thofe houfes, and look for the town as well as they could. They went on a little way, and found a cow tied to a tree. This they prefently concluded would be a good guide to them; for they faid the cow certainly belonged to the town before them, of the town behind thein; and if they untied her, they fhould fee which way fhe went: if the went back, they had nothing to fay to her; but, if fhe went forward, they had nothing to do but to follow her. So they cut the cord, which was made of twifted flags, and the cow went on before them. In a word, the cow led them direatly to the town, which, as they reported, confified of above two hundred houfes or huts; and in fome of thefe they found feveral families living together.

Here they found all filent; as profoundly fecure as fleep and a country that had never feen an enemy of that kind could make them. Upon this they called another council, to contider what they had to do; and, in a word, they refolved to divide themfelves into three bodies, and to fet three houfes on fire in three parts of the town, and as the men came out, to feize them and bind them, if any refifted; they need not be afked what to do then; and fo fearch the reft of the houfes for plunder; but refolved to march filently firft through the town, and fee what dimenfions it was of, and confider if they might venture upon it or no.

They did fo, and defperately reSolved that they would venture upon them.
them. But while they were animating ane another to the work, the reft, called that were a little before them they had out aloud, and told them They all ran found Thomas Jettries. it was indeed; up to the place, and the poor fellow for there they throar cut. There was an Indian throas. jut by the tree, where they found houfe jult by the tree, whe principal fixteen or who had been concerned in Indians, who had beene, and two or the fray with us befed with our fhot; three of them wounded wey were awake, and our men found they were in that and talking one to another in ther. houfe, but knew not their nuangled

The fight of their poor, as before, comrade fo enraged one another they that they fwore to one that not an would be revenged, and their hands Indian who came into the work they fhould have quarter: and to wet not fo went immediately, madly as, by the lage expectect. Their were in, might be expemething that firft care was to get comething little would foon take fire; but after a little fearch, they found that would beufes no purpofe, for mor with flags or were low, and thatche country was full: ruhtes, of which the countome wildfire, fo they prefently made fome wildirel as they call it, by wetting a little powder in the palms of their hands; and in a quatter of an hour, they fet and, in a quarter in four or five places, and particularly that houfe where the and particulare not gone to bed. As Indians were not gone to blaze, the foon as the fire began began to rufh poor frighted creatures ; but met with out to fave their lives; but, and efpetheir fate in the atere they drove cially at the door, where they drove them back, the boattwain hile-ax. The ing one or two with his pole-a. in it, he houfe being large, and, but called for a did not care to and threw it among hand-grenado, and frighted them; them, which, at nim, fige fuch havock but when it burf, made cried out in among us mer.
a hideous manner.
In fhort, moft of the Indias the houfe were in the open pith the grenado, were killed or hur with tho preffed except two or three more, who pirfled to the door, which the boatiwanets in two more kept with the bayonets in the muzzles of their pieces, and dir
patched all who came that way. But there was another apartment in the houfe, where the prince or king, or whatfoever he was, and feveral others were ; and they kept in, till the houfe, which was by this time all of a light fire, fell in upon them; and they flame, fell in upon them,
were ill this while they fired not a gun, ecaufe they would not waken the people falter than they could matter people but the fire began to wakess them; fut eneugh, and our fellows them falt enough, anittle togetber in were glad to keep a littie fo raging, bodies; for the fire grew of light all the houfes being made could combuftible ftuf, that tween ; hardly bear the freet between them; and their bufinefs was to follow faft fire for the furer execution. As fatt as the fire either forced the people out of thofe houfes which were burning, or frighted them out of others, our people were ready at their doors to people were ready at fead, fill calling knock them on the head, another calling and hallooing

Wh The in conWhile this was dory, and efpecially, fefs I was very uneary, of the town, when I faw the flames of the to juft which, it being night, feemed to be jult by me.

My nephew, the captain, who was rouzed by his men too, feeing fuch a fire, was very uneafy, not knowing what the matter was, or what danger what the matter ally hearing the guns I was in; efpecially hearing began to too; for by this time they began to ufe their fire-arms. A thoufand thoughts oppreffed his mind concerning me and the fupercargo, what hould become of us. And at lalt, though become of us. Ane more men, yet, he could ill fare at exigence we might not knowing what exh boat, and with be in, he takes anoth himfelf comes on thirteen men
fhore to me,
He was furprized to fee me and the He was furprized ta with no more fupercargo in the boat, wid been left than two men, for one had been was to keep the boat: and though he was glad that we were well, yet he was in the fame impatience with us, to know what was doing; for the noife continued, and the flame increafed. Ic nued, it was next to an impoffibility for any men in the world to rettrain thap ctriofity of knowing what had happened, or their concern for the captain of the men. In a word, the cold
told me, he would go and help his men, let what would come. I argued with him, as I did before with the men, the fafety of the fhip, and the danger of the voyage, the intereft of the owners and merchants, \&c. and told him, I would go, and the two men, and only fee if we could, at a diftance, learn what was like to be the event, and come back and tell him.
It was all one to talk to my nephew, as it was to talk to the reft before; he would go, he faid, and he only wifhed he had left but ten men in the thip; for he could not think of having his men loft for want of help. He had rather, he faid, lofe the fhip, the voyage, and his life, and all. And fo away went he.
Nor was I any more able to flay behind now, than I was to perfuade them not to go before; fo, in fhort, the captain ordered two men to row back the pinnace, and fetch twelve men more from the thip, leaving the long-boat at an anchor; and that when they came back, fix men fhould keep the two boats, and fix more come after us. So that he left only fixteen men in the fhip; for the whole fhip's company confilted of fixty-five men, whereof two were loft in the firft quarrel, which brought this mifchief on.
Being now on the march, you may be fure we felt little of the ground we rrod on; and being guided by the fire, we kept no path, but went directly to the place of the flame. If the noife of the guns were furprizing to us before, the cries of the poor people were now quite of another nature, and filled us with horror. I muft confefs, I never was at the facking of a city, or at the taking of a town by ftorm. I have heard of Oliver Cromwell taking Drogheda in Ireland, and killing man, woman, and child; and I had read of Count Tilly facking of the city of Magdeburg, and cutting the throats of twenty-two thoufand of both fexes; but I never had an idea of the thing itfelf before; nor is it poffible to defcribe it, or the horror which was upon our minds at hearing it.

However, we went on, and at length, came to the town, though there was no entering the Atreets of it for the fire. The firlt object we met with was the ruins of a hut or houfe,
or rather the afhes of it, for the houfe was confumed; and juft before it, plain now to be feen by the light of the fire, lay four men and three women killed, and, as we thought, one or two more lay in the heap among the fire. In fhort, thefe were fuch inftances of rage altogether barbarous, and of a fury fomething beyond what was human, that we thought it impoffible our men could be guilty of it; or, if they were the authors of it, we thought that every one of them ought to be put to the worft of deaths. But this was not all; we faw the fire increafed forward, and the cry went on juft as the fire went on, fo that we were in the utmoft confufion. We advanced a little way farther, and beheld, to our aftonifhment, three women naked, crying in a moft dreadful manner, and flying as if they had indeed had wings, and after them fixteen or feventeen men, natives, in the fame terror and confternation, with three of our Englifh butchers (for I can call them no better) in the rear; who, when they could not overtake them, fired in among them, and one that was killed by the fhot fell down in our fight: when the reft faw us, believing us to be their enemies, and that we would murder them, as well as thofe that purfued them, they fet up a moft dreadful fhriek, efpecially the women; and two of them fell down as if already dead with the fright.

My very foul fhrunk within me, and my blood ran chill in my veins when I faw this ; and I believe, had the three Englith failors that purfued them come on, I had made our men kill them all. However, we took fome ways to let the poor flying creatures know that we would not hurt them; and immediatly they came up to us, and kneeling down, with their hands lifted up, made piteous lamentations to us to fave them, which we let them know we would do; whereupon they kept all together in a huddle, clofe behind us, for protection. I left my men drawn up together, and charged. them to hurt nobody, but, if poffible, to get at fome of our people, and fee what devil it was poffeffed them, and what they intended to do; and, in a word, to command them off; affuring them, that if they fayed till day-light, they would have a hundred
thouland men about their ears. I fay, I left them, and went among thofe flying people, taking only two of our men witeou's fpectacle among them. Some of them had their feet terribly burnt with trampling and running through the fire; others their hands burnt: one of the women had fallen down in the fire, and was almoft burnt to death before the could get out again; two or three of the men had cuts in their backs and thighs, from our men purfuing; and another was thot through the body, and died while I was there. I would fain have learned what the occafion of all this was, but $I$ could not underitand one word they faid; though by figns I perceived, that fome of them knew not what was the occafion themfelves. I was fo terrified in my thoughts at this outrageous attempt, that I could not fay there, but went back to my own men. Fold them my refolution, and commanded them to follow me; when in the very moment came four of our men, with the boatfwain at their head, running over the heaps of bodies they had killed, all covered with blood and duft, as if they wanted more people to maffacre; when our men hallooed to them as loud as they could halloo, and with much ado one of them made them hear; fo that they knew who we were, and came up to us.

As foon as the boatfwain faw us, he fet up a halloo like a fhout of triumph, for having, as he thought, more help corme; and, without bearing to hear me, 'Captain,' fays he, ' noble - captain, I am glad you are Come, - we have not half done yill kill as many 6 hell-hound dogs ! I will kil has hairs - of them as poor We have fworn to - upon his head. We have worn root - fpare none of them; we will root - out the very nation of them from 'the earth. And thus he ran on, out of breath too with action; and would not give us leave to fpeak a word.

At laft, raifing my voice, that I might filence him a little: 'Barba' rous dog!' faid I, ' what are you 6 doing? I won't have one creature - touiched more, upon pain of death.

- I charge you, upon your life, to ftop
- your hands, and trand firl here, or
' you are a dead man this minute!'
- Why, Sir,' fays he, 6 do you Eknow what you do, or what they $r$ have done? If you want a realon for 6 what we have done, come hither. And with that he inewed me the poor fellow hanging upon a tree; with his throat cut.
I confefs, I was urged then myfelf, and at another time fhould have been forward enough; but I thought they had carried their rage too far, and had carried Jab's words to his thought of Jacob's words Curfed be fons Simeon and Levi, ' Curied be ' their anger, for it was fierce; and ' their wrath, for it was cruel. But I had now a new takk upon my hands; I had when the men I carried with me for when the men I had done, I nad faw the fight, as I firm, as I as much to do to relre fhould have had with the others; my nephew himfelf fell in with thers, and told me, in their hearing, that he was only concerned for fear of their men being overpowered; for, as to the people, he thought not one of them ought to live; for they had all glutted themfelves with the murder of the poor man, and that they ought to be ufed like murderers. Upon thefe words, away ran eight of my men, with the boatfwain and his crew, to compleat their bloody work. And I, feeing it quite out of my power to reftrain them, came away penfive and fad; for I could not bear the fight, much lefs the horrible noife and cries of the poor wretches that fell into their hands.
I got nobody to come back with
I but the fupercargo and two men, and with thefe I walked back to the boats. It was a very great piece of folly in me, I confefs, to venture back as it were alone; for, as it began now to be almolt day, and the alarm had rin over the country, there itood about forty men armed with lances and bow the little place where the twelve or thirteen houfes food, mentioned before; but by accident I miffed the place, and came directly to the feathe place, and that time $I$ got to the fea-fide, it was broad day. I imme-fea-fide, fit the pinnace, and went on diately took the pirer back to affift the board, and what might happen.
I obferved thiat about the time I Ine to the boat-fide the fire was came well out, and the noife abated; but in about half an hour after I got on board, I heard a volley of our Hh


## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

## 242

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

men's fre-arms, and faw a great fmoke. This, as I underftood afterwards, was our men falling upon the forty men, who, as I faid, food at forty few houfes in the way; of whom they killed fixteeen or feventeen, and cet killed inxtees on fire, but did not meddle with the women or children.

By that time the men got to the fhore again with the pinnace, our men began to appear; they came dropping in, fome and fome; not in two bodies, and in form, as they went out, but all in heaps, fraggling here and there, in fuch a manner, that a fmall force of refolute men might have cut them all off.

But the dread of them was upon the whole country. The people were amazed and furprized, and fo frighted, that I believe a hundred of them that would have fled at the fight of but would have men. Nor in all this terfive of our men. Nor in all this tersible action was there a man who made any confiderable defence; they were fo furprized between the terwor of the fire, and the fudden attack of our men in the dark, that they knew not which way to turn themfelves; for if they fled one way, they were met by one party; if back again by another; fo that they were every where knocked down. Nor did any of our men receive the lealt hurt, except one who ftrained his foot, and another had one of his hands very much barnt.
I was very angry with my nephew, the captain ${ }_{F}$ and indeed with all the men, in my mind, but with him in particular; as well for his aeting fo out of his duty, as commander of the fhip, and having the charge of the voyage upon him, as in his prompting, rather than cooling, the rage of his men in fo bloody and cruel an enterprize. My nephew anfwered me very pefpectfully; but told me, that when he faw the body of the poor feaman, whom they had murdered in fuch a cruel and barbarous manner, he was not mafter of himfelf, neither could he govern his paffion. He owned he fhould not have done fo, as he was commander of the fhip; but, as he was a man, and nature moved him, he could not bear it. As for the reft of the men, they were not fubjeet to me at all, and they knew it well
enough, fo they took no notice of $m y$ diflike.

The next day we fet fail ; fo wenever heard any more of it. Our men differed in the account of the number they killed; fome faid one thing, fome another; but, according to the beft of their accounts, put all together, they killed accounts, put all together, thed and fifty or deftroyed about a hundred and if people, men, women and children, and left not a houfe ftanding in the town.
As for the poor fellow, Thomas Jeffries, as he was quite dead, for his throat was fo cut that his head was half off, it would do him no fervice to bring him away; fo they left him where they found him, only took him down from the tree where he was hanged by one hand.

However juft our men thought this aetion to be, I was againft them in it; and I always, after that time, told them God would blaft the voyage; for I looked upon the blood they fhed that night to be murder in them : for though it is true that they killed Thomas Jeffries, yet it was as true that Jeffries was the aggreffor, had broken the truce, and had violated or debauched a young woman of theirs, who came to our camp innocently, and on the faith of their capitulation.

The boatfwain defended this quarrel when we were afterwayds on board. He faid, it was true, that we feemed to break the truce, but really had net; and that the war was begun the night before by the natives themfelves, who had fhot at us, and killed one of our men without any juft provocation; fo that, as we were in a capacity to fight them, we might alfo be in a capacity to do ourfelves juftice upon them in an extraordinary manner; that though the poor man had taken liberty with a wench, he ought not to have been murdered, and that in fuch a villainous manner; and that they did nothing but what was juft, and that the laws of God allowed to be done to murderers.

One would think this fhould have been enough to have warned us againft going on fhore among heathens and barbarians; but it is impoffible to make mankind wife but at their own experience, and their experience feems to be always of moft ufe to them when it is deareft bought.

We were now bound to the Gulph of Perfia, and from thence to the coan of Coromandel, only the fupercargo's defign lay at the Bay of Bengal, where, if he milfed of the bufinefs outwardbound, he was to go up to China, and bound the Coalt as he came home.
The firft difafter that befel us was in the Gulph of Perfia, where five of our men, venturing on fhore on theArabian fide of the Gulph, were furrounded by the Arabs, and either all killed, or carried away into flavery. The reft of the boat's crew were not able to refcue them, and had but juit time to get off their boat. I began to upbraid them with the juft retribution of Heaven in this cafe; but the boat-
fwain very warmly told me, he thought I went farther in my cenfures than I could thew any warrant for in Scripsure, and referred to the $\$ 3$ th of St Luke, ver. 4. where our Saviour intimates, that thofe men on whom the Tower of Siloam fell, were not finners above all the Galileans. But that which indeed put me to filence in this cafe was, that none of thefe five men who were now loft, were of the number of thofe who went on fhore to the maffacre of Madagafcar, (fo I always called it, thougn our men thald not bear the word mallacre with any patience;) and, indeed, this latt circuinftance, as I have
filence for the prefent
But my frequent preaching to them on this fubject had worfe confequences than I expected; and the boatfwain, who had been at the head of the attempt, came up boldly to me one time, and told me, he found that I contimually brought that affair upon the itage; that I made unjuft reflections upon it, and had ufed the men very ill on that account, and himfelf in particular; that as I was but a paffenger, and had no command in the flip, or concern in the voyage, they were not obliged to bear it; that they did not know but I might have fome ill defign in my head, and, perhaps, call them to an account for it when they came en Ingld reand that therefore, unlefs it and alfo folve to have done with it, not to concern myfelf farther with him, or any of his affairs, he would leave the fhip; for he did not think it wa
(fanfe to fail with me among them.

I heard him patiently enough till he had done, and then told him, that I did confefs I had all along oppofed the maffacre of Madagafcar, for fuch I would always call it; and that I had on all occafions fpoken my mind freely about it, though not more upon him aboun iny of the reft : that as to my than any of the reit: tbat as to my having no command in the thip, that was true, nor thook the liberty of f peaking my mind in things which publicky mind us all. As to what lickly concerned us al. concern Ihad infers; I was a confinone of his bumene hip, and in that derable owner of the hip, and right to claim I conceived I had I had yet fpeak, even farther than I had yet done, and would not be accountable done, and would one elfe; and began to to him or any with him. He made be a little warm to me that time, and but little reply to me at that over. I thought the afrair in the road to We were at this time in the re Bengal; and, being willing to fee the place, I went on fhore with the fupercargo, in the fhip's boat, to divert myfelf; and towards evening was preparing to go on board, when one of paring then came to me, and told me, be would not have me trouble my felf to come down to the boat, for they had orders not to carry me on board. Any one may guefs what a furprize I was ne folent a meffage; and I afkin at ed the man, who bade told me the that errand I faid no more to the fel cockiwain. I know he low, but bid him had delivered his meffage, and
had given him no aniwer and found out
1 immediately woent, and him the fory, the fupercargo, prefently forefaw, viz. adding, what prertainly be a mutiny that there would intreated him to go in the lhip; and intreat the in an immediately on board the hip in an Indian boat, and acquaint the captain of it. But I might have fpared this intelligence; for, before I had fpoken to him on thore, the matter was effectthe board. The boatfwain, the guned on board. Ther bll ner, the carpenter, and in a word, the inferior officers, as foon as I was gone off in the boat, came up to the quarter-deck, and defired to fpeak with the captain; and there (for the fel. making a long harangue, (for the fel low talked very well) and repeating all he had faid to me,
$\mathrm{H} h$

## 244

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

tain in a few words, that as I was now gone peaceably on fhore, they were loth to ufe any violence with me; which, if I had not gone on fhore, they would otherwife have done, to oblige me to have gone. They therefore thought fit to tell him, that as they fhipped themfelves to ferve in the thip under his command, they would perform it faithfully; but if I would not quit the fhip, or the captain oblige me to quit it, they would all leave the flip, and fail-no farther with him. And at that word ALL, he turned his face about towards the main-maft, which was, it feems, the fignal agreed on between them; at which all the feamen being got together, they cried out, ' One and all! one and all!
My nephew, the captain, was a man of fpirit, and of great prefence of mind; and though he was furprized, you may be fure, at the thing, yet he told them calmly, he would confider of the matter; but that he could do nothing in it till he had fpoken to me about it. He ufed fome arguments with them, to fhew them the unreafonableness and injuftice of the thing; but it was all in vain: they fwore, and fhook hands round, berore ils fanle's he would engo all on thore, unle's he would engage to them, not to fuffer me to come on board the fhip.

This was a hard article upon him, who knew his obligation to me, and did not know how I might take et. So he began to talk cavanerly to confiderable owner of the fhip, and that in juftice he could not put me out of my juftice he could this was next door to ferving me as the famous pirate Kid had done, who made the mutiny in the fhip, fet the captain on fhore in an uninhabited ifland, and ran away with the flip ; that, let them go into what fhip they would, if ever they came to England again, it would coft them dear; that the fhip was mine, and that he would not put me out of it; and that he would rather lofe the fhip', and the voyage too, than difoblige me fo much: fo they might do as they pleafed. However, he would go on fhore, and talk with me there; and invited the boatiwain to go with him, and perhaps they might ascommodate the matfer with me.

But they all rejected the propofal; and faid, they would have nothing to do with me any more, neither on hoard nor on thore; and if came on board, they would go on thore. Well, laid the captain, if you are all of this mind, let me go on frore and talw with this acSo away litule a fer the meflige had count, a hele the cock. been brought to me from the cockr fwain.

I was very glad to fee my nephew, I muft confers; for I was not without apprehenions that they would conine him by violence, fet fand then I had been fripped naked in a remote country, and nothing to help myfelf : in try, and nothing to help mylelf : in
fhoit, I had been in a worfe cafe than when I was all alone in the ifland.

But they had not come to that length, it feems, to my great fatisfaction. And when my pephew told me what they had faid to him, and how they had fworn, and fhook hands, that they would one and all leave the fhip if I was fuffered to come on board, I told him he flould not be concerned at it at all, for I would ftay on fhore. I only defired he, would take care and fend me all my neceffary things on hore, and leave me a fufficient, fum of money, and I would find my way to England as well as I could.

This was a heavy piece of news to my nephew; but there was no way to help it, but to comply with it. So in thort he went on board the flip again, and fatisfied the men that his uncle had yielded to their importunity, and had fent for his goods from on board the fhip. So the matter was over in a yery few hours; the men returned to their duty, and I begun to confider what courfe I fhould fteer.
I was now alone in the remoteft part of the world, as I think I may call it; for I was near three thoufand leagues by fea farther off from England than I was at my ifland; only, it is true, 1 might travel here by land over the Great Mogul's country to Surat; might go from thence to Baffora by fea, up the Gulph of Perfia; and from thence might take the way of the caravans, over the Defarts of Arabia, to Aleppo and Scanderoon; from thence by rea again to Italy, and and this, put together, might
be, at leaft, a full diameter of the globe, but, if it were to be mealured, it would appear to be a great de, which I had another way berornlif fhips, was to wait swhich were coming to Sumatra, añd Achin, on the illand them for Engget paffage on board them hither without land. But as 1 came Englifh Eaftany concern with the Enld be diffiIndia company, fo hence without their cult to go from hence with fout of licence, unlets with grips, or of the the captains of the inips, or I was company's fack
an utter Itranger.
Here I had the particular pleafure, Here I had the particular plearure, fpeaking by conthou me; a treatment, Thip ret Ithink, a man with, except from pifcarce everning away with a thip, and rates runne fould not agree with fetting thofe that wourre: indeed, this their villaine door to it both ways. was nephew left me two ferHowever, my nephew companion and vants, or rat the firft was clerk to the one ler whom he engaged to go with purfer, whom he engas his own ferme; and the other alfo a good lodging in the houfe of an Englifh woman, in the houre of anchants lodged, fome where feveral merchas, or rather Jews, Fin one Englifhman. Here I was handand one enough entertained; and, that I might not be faid to run rafhly upon Imigthing, I fayed here above nine any thing, confidering what courfe to months, con to manage myfelf. I had fome Englih goods with me of value, and a confiderable fum of money; my nephew furnifhing me witter thourand pieces of eight, and a of credit for more, if I had occarion, of credit that I might not be ftraitened, whatever might happen.
I quickly difpofed of my gnods, and to advantage too; and, as 1 originally to advanta, I bought here fome very good diamonds, which, of all other things, were the mort proper for me in my circumftances, becaur mout me. always carry my whole eftate about me. a) After a long fay here, and many ropofals made for my return ty mind land, but none falling to my mind, the Englifh merchant, who had conwith me, and with acquaintance, came practec
to me one morning. $\in T$ have a project to commufays he, 'I have a prob, as it fuits with nicate to you, which, ar aught I know, my thoughts, may, for when we thall - fuit with yours alco, wher it.
' have thoroughly conidered he; 'y you
'Here we are poted,' fay he ' by accident, and I by my own choice, - by accident, andl byorld very remote - in a part of the wortry; but it is in - from our own co by us who undera country where, bufinefs, a great deal Itand trade as to be got. If you will ' of money is to be got. to my thou-- put a thoufand pounds hire a flip - fand pounds, we wil get to our. - here, the firlt we ca captain, III - minds; you ,hand we will go a trad-- be merchant, and - ing voyage to China, The whole world ; we fand fill for? rolling round and is in motion, creatures of God, - round; all thedies and earthly, are buly ' and diligent: why fhould we be ide? 'and diligent: why , fays he, ' liv-- There are no drones, but men: why ' ing in the world but mer? - fhould we be of that number well, and Iliked this propofal very well, and the more, becaufe it feemed to preffed with fo much good will, and in fo friendly a manner. I will not fay but that I might, by my loofe fay unhinged circumftances, be the fitter to embrace a propolal for trade, and indeed for any thing elle; or otherwife trade was none, of ars fay, otherwife however, I might perliaps says with fome truth, that not my element, rambing wat of the no propofal for feeing any part offore no prld which I had never feen be could poffibly come amins to time before It was, however, we could get a mpel, it was not eafy to when we got a vers, that is to fay, fo get Englim were neceffary to govern the voyage, and manage the failors fome we fhould pick up there. After time we got a mate, a Dutch carpena gunner, Englim; a Dot foremaft ter, and three po found we could men. With there having Indian feado well enough, having make up. men, fuch as they are, to make who There are fo miftory of their voyhave written thels this way, that it ages and travery little divertion to any body, to give a long account of any body, to give a long accom the

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

the places we went to, and the people who inhabit there. Thofe things I leave to others, and refer the reader to thofe journals and travels of Englifhmen, many of which I find are publifhed, and more promifed every day. It is enough for me to tell you, that we made the voyage to Achin, in the ifland of Sumatra, firtt ; and from thence to Siam, where we exchanged fome of our wares for opium, and for fome arrack; the firf, a commodity which bears a great price among the Chinefe, and which, at that time, was very much wanted there. In a word, we went up to Sufham, made a very great voyage, were eight months out, and returned to Bengal: and I was very well fatisfied with my adventure. I obferve, that our people in England often admire how the officers which the company fend into India, and the merchants which generally ftay there, get fuch very good eftates as they do, and fometimes come home worth fixty to feventy, and a hundred thoufand pounds at a time.
But it is no wonder: or, at, leaft we flall fee fo much farther into it, when we confider the innumerable ports and places where they have a free commerce, that it will then be no wonder; and much lefs will it be fo, when we confider, that at all thofe places and ports where the Englifh fhips come, there is fo much and fuch conftant demand for the growth of all other countries, that there is a certain vent for the return, as well as a market abroad for the goods carried out.

In fhort, we made a very good voyage, and I got fo much money by the firft adventure, and fuch an infight into the method of getting more, that, had I been twenty years younger, I fhould have been tempted to have ftayed here, and fought no farther for making my fortune. But what was all this to a man on the wrong fide of threefcore; that was rich enough, and came abroad more in ubedience to a reftlefs defire of feeing the world, than a covetous defire of getting in it ? And, indeed, I think it is with great juftice that I now call it a reftlels defire; for it was fo. When I was at home, I was reftlefs to go abroad; and now I was abroad, I was reftlels to be at home. I lay, what was this gain to me? I was rich enough alrea-
dy; nor had I any uneafy defires about getting more money; and therefore the profits of the voyage to me were things of no great force to me, for the prompting me forward to farther undertakings. Hence I thought, that by this voyage I had made no progrefs at all; becaufe I was come back, as I might call it, to the place from whence I came, as to an home; whereas my eye, which, like that which Solomon fpeaks of, was never fatisfied with feeing, was fill more defirous of wandering and feeing. I was come into a part of the world which I never was in before; and that part in particular which I had heard much of, and was refolved to fee as much of it as I could; and then, I thought, I might fay, I had feen all the world that was worth feeing
But my fellow-traveller and I had different notions. I do not name this to infilt upon my own, for I acknowledge his was moft juft, and the moft fuited to the end of a merchant's life; who, when he is abroad upon adventures, it is his wifdom to fick to that as the beit thing for him, which he is like to get the moft money by. My new friend kept himfelf to the nature of the thing, and would have been content to have gone like a carrier's horfe, always to the fame inn, backward and forward, provided he could, as he called it, find his account in it. On the other hand, mine, as old as I was, was the notion of a mad rambling boy, that never cares to fee a thing twice over.

But this was not all. I had a kind of impatience upon me to be nearer home, and yet the moft unfettled refolution imaginable which way to go. In the interval of thefe confultations, my friend, who was always upon the fearch for bufinets, propofed another voyage to me; viz. among the Spice Illands; and to bring home a load of cloves from the Manillas, or thereabouts; places where, indeed, the Dutch do trade, but the iflands belong partly to the Spaniards : though we went not fo far, but to fome other, where they have not the whole power, as they have at Batavia, Ceylon, \&\%c. We were not long in preparing for this voyage; the chief difficulty was, in bringing me to come into it: however, at laft, nothing elfe offering, and
finding that really ftirring about and trading, the profit being fo great, and, as I may fay, certare fatisfaction to the fure in it, and more fill, which to mind than fitting ftill, which, to me efpecially, was the unhappieft part of life, I refolved on this voyage too; which we made very fucceisfully, touching at Borneo, and feveral iflands whofe names I do not remember, and came home in about five months. We fold our fpice, which was chiefly cloves, and fome nutmegs, to the Perfian merchants, who carried them away for the gulph; and, making near five of one, we really got a great deal of money.
My friend, when we made up this account, fmiled at me. "Well now, faid he, with a fort of an agreeable in fult upon my indolent temper, ' is not - this better than walking about here, - like a man of nothing to do, and - fpending our time in flaring at the - nonfenfe and ignorance of the $\mathrm{Pa}-$ - gans ?' - Why, truly,' faid I, 'my - friend, I think it is; and I begin to - be a convert to the principles of mer' chandizing; but I mult tell you,' faid I, 'by the way, you do not know - what I am a doing; for if once I © conquer my backwardnefs, and em-- bark heartily, as old as I am, I fhall - harrafs you up and down the world - till I tire you; for I' thall purfue it - fo eagerly, I flall never let you lie - filll.

But to be fhort with my fpeculations, a little while after this there came in a Dutch Rhip from Batavia; The was a coaiter, not an European trader, and of about two hundred tons burden. The men, as they pretend ed, having been fo fickly, that the captain had not men enough to go to fea with, he lay by at Bengal; and, as if having got money enough, or being willing for other reafons, to go for Europe, he gave publick notice that he would fell his fhip. This came to my ears before my new partner heard of it; and I had a great mind to buy it: 10 I went home to him, and told him of it. He confiders a while, for he was no rafh man neither; but mufing fome time, he replied, 'She is a - little too big; but, however, we - will have her. Accordingly, we bought the flip; and, agreeing with the mafter, we paid for her, and took poffeflion. When we had donefo, we
efolved to entertain the men, if we could, to join them with thofe we had, for the purfuing our bufinefs; but on a fudden, they having not received their wages, but their thare of the money, as we afterwards learnt, not one of them was to be found. We enquired much about them, and at length were told, that they were all gone together by land, to Agra, the great city of the Mogul's refidence; and from thence were to travel to Surat, and fo by fea to the Gulph of Perfia.
Nothing had fo heartily troubled me a good while, as that I miffed the opportunity of going with them; for fuch a ramble, I thought, and in fuch company as would both have guarded me and diverted me, would have fuited mightily with my great defign; and I fhould both have jeen the world, and gone homewards too. But 1 was much better fatisfied a few days after, when I came to know what fort of fellows they were ; for, in fhort, their hiftory was, that this man they called captain, was the gunner only, not the commander; that they had been a trading voyage, in which they were attacked on fhore by fome of the Melaccans, who had killed the captain and three of his men; and that after the captain was killed, thefe men, eleven in number, had refolved to run away with the fhip, which they did, and had brought her in at the Bay of Bengal, leaving the mate and five men more on thore; of whom we fhall hear farther.
Well; let them come by the fhip how they would, we came honeflly by her as we thought; though we did not, I confels, examine into things fo exactly as we ought; for we never en quired any thing of the feamen, who, it we had examined, would certainiy have faultered in their accounts, contradicted one another, and, perhaps, contradieted themfelves; or, one how or other, we thould have feen reafon to have fufpected them: but the man Chewed us a bill of fale for the fhip to one Emanuel Cloferthoven, or fome fuch name, (for I fuppofe it was all a fuch name, (for 1 fuppore if was all a forgery) and called himielf by that name; and we could not contradic him; and, being withal a little too unwary, or at leaft having no furpicion of the thing, we went through with our bargain.

However, we picked up fome Englifh
glifh feamen here after this, and fome Dutch; and we now refolved for a fecond voyage to the fouth-eaft, for cloves, \&c, that is to fay, among the
Philippine and Malacca ifles; and, in Philippine and Malacca ifles; and, in fhort, not to fill this part of my ftory with trifies, when what is yet to come is fo remarkable, I fpent, from firft to laft, fix years in this country, traceing from port to port, backward and forward, and with very good fuccefs; and was now the laft year with my partner, going in the Thip above-mentioned on a voyage to China; but defigning firft to Siam to buy rice.

In this voyage being, by contrary winds, obliged to beat up and down a great while in the Straits of Malacca, and among the illands, we were feas, but we found our hip had prung reas, but we found our mip had fprung a lind indury, to find out where it This forced us to make for fome port ; This forced us to make for fome port; try better than I did, directed the cap tain to put into the River of Cambo dia; for I had made the Englin mate, one Mr. Thompfon, captain , wot ing willing to take the charge of ing willing to take the charge of the the north-fide of the great bay or gulph which goes up to Siam.
While we were here, and going often on fhore for refrefhment, there comes to me one day an Englifhman, and he was, it feems, a gunner's mate on board an Englifh Eaft-India fhip, which rode in the fame river, up, at, or near the city of Cambodia. What brought him hither we knew not; but he comes up to me, and fpeaking Englifh, 'Sir, fays he, 'you are a ftranger to me, and I to you; but I have 6 fomething to tell you that very near-- ly concerns you.

I looked fteadily at him a good while, and he thought at firft I had known him, but I did not. 'If it \& very nearly concerns me, faid I, 6 and not yourfelf, what moves you 6 to tell it me?'- 'I am moved,' fays he, 'by the imminent danger you are - in; and, for aught I fee, you have - no knowledge of it.'-'I know no - danger I am in,' faid I, ' but that 6 my thip is leaky, and I cannot find - it dut; but I propofe to lay her a-- ground to morrow, to fee if I can - find it.' - But, Sir, 'fays he, 'leaky,

- or not leaky, find it or not find it, 6 you will be wifer than to lay your - fhip on flore to-morrow, when you 6 hear what I have to fay to you. Do - you know, Sir,' faid he, 'the town of Cambodia lies about fifteen leagues up this river? and there are two large - Englifh fhips about five leagues on 6 this fide, and three Dutch.'- 'Well,' faid I, 'and what is that to me?' 6 Why, Sir,' fays he, 'is it for a man that is upon fuch adventures as you are, to come into a port and not ex6 amine firft what fhips there are there, ; and whether he is able to deal with 6 them? I fuppofe you do not think ' you are a match for them.' I was amufed very much at his difcourfe, but not amazed at it; for I could not conceive what he meant; and I turned fhort upon him, and faid, 'Sir, I wifh - you would explain yourfelf; I can-- not imagine what reafon I have to be afraid of any of the company's fhips, or Dutch Chips; I am no interloper; what can they have to fay to me?' half pleafed like a man half angry, haif pleafed; and, paufing a while, but fmiling, 'Well, Sir,' fays he, 'if ' you think yourfelf fecure, you muft - take your chance. I am forry your - fate fhould blind you againft good - advice; but affure yourfelf, if you do not put to fea immediately, you will the very next tide be attacke - perhaps, if you are taken, you will perhaps, if you are taken, you will
be hanged for a pirate, and the par6 ticulars be examined into afterwards ' I thought, Sir,' added he, 'I fhould I thought, Sir,' added he, 'I Thould have met with a better reception than
this for doing you a piece of ferthis for doing you a piece of fervice of fuch importance.- - I can s any fervice, or to any man that any rervice, or to any man that
offers me any kindnefs; but it is paft my comprehenfion, what they thould have fuch a defign upon me for. However, fince you fay there is no time to be loft, and that there is fome villainous defign in hand againft me, I will go on board this minute, and put to fea immediately if my men can ftop the leak, or if we can fwim without ftopping it. But, Sir,' faid I, 'fhall I go away ignorant of the reafon of all this? Can you give me no farther light
'I can tell you but part of the
- Pory, Sir,' fays he; 'but I have a - Dutch feaman here with me, to tell - believe I could perfuade him the time - you the reft; but the fliort of the ftory is - this, the firft part of which I fuppofe - you know well enough, viz. that you 6 you know welt this fhip at Sumatra; that ${ }_{6}^{6}$ there your captain was murdered by 6 the Melaccans, with three of his - men ; and that you, or fome of thofe - that were on board with you, ran - away with the fhip, and are fince - turned pirates. I his is the fum of 6 the ftory, and you will all be exe-- cuted with very little ceremony; - for you know merchants fhips fhew 6 but little law to pirates, if they get - them in their power.
'Now you fpeak plain Englifh, faid I, 'and I thank you; and though 6 I know nothing that we have done - like what you talk of, but I am fure - we came honeftly and fairly by the - fhip, yet, feeing fuch work is a doc ing as you fay, and that you feem 6 to mean honeftly, I will be upon my - guard.'- Nay, Sir,' faid he, 'do - not talk of being upon your guard; - the beft defence is to be out of the - danger. If you have any regard to 'your life, and the lives of all your - men, put out to fea without fail at 6 high-water; and as you have a - whole tide before you, you will be - gone too far out before they can - come down; for they will come 6 away at high water; and as they - have twenty miles to come, you get - near two hours of them by the dif-- ference of the tide, not reckoning - the length of the way: befides, as - they are only boats, and not hips, - they will not venture to follow you - far out to fea, efpecially if it blows? 'Well,' faid I, 'you have been 6 very kind in this: what fhall I do for you to make you amends? Sir,' fays he, 'you may not be fo - willing to make me amends, becaufe 6 you may not be convinced of the truth of - you. I have nineteen me thip due to on board the 6 which I came out of England in; 6 and the Dutchman that is with me has feven months pay due if you will make good our pay to
us, we will go along with you; if you find nothing more in it, we will defire no more, but if we do cons vince you, that we have raved your life, and the fliip, and the lives or all the men in her, we will leave the reft to you.:
I confented to this readily; and went inmediately on board, and the two men with me. As foon as I came to the fhip-fide, my partner, who was on board, came out on the quarter deck, and called to me with a great deal of joy; 'O ho! O ho! we have ftopped the leak! we have fopped; - the leak!'- Say you fo, faid I; - thank God! but weigh the anchor 'then immediately. - 'Weigh! rays he: ' what do you mean by that? What is the matter:- - all hands to 6 tions,' 1aid I, 'but all hands lofing a work, and weigh without las : but, minute. He was furprize and he however, he called the captain, andor to be immediately ordered the tide was not got up; and thoug little land breeze quite done, yet a the fea. Thent blowing, we ftood out cabin, and told I called him into the cabind, we called him the ftory at large; and we called in the men, and threy told us the deal of it; but as it took us up a great done, a of time, 10 before wan comes to the cabin-door, and feaman comes to the cabin-door, and calls out to us, that the captain bade
him tell us we were chafed. 'Chafed, him tell us we were chaled by what?' ' By five floops, or boats,' faid the fellow, ffull of men.- - Very well? fellow, 'full of men. 'then it is apparent there is fomething in it." In the next place I ordered all our men to be called up and told them, that there was a defign to feize the flip, and to take us for pirates; and anked them, if they would ftand by us and by one another. The men anfwered chearfully, that, one and all, they would live and die with us. Then I afked the captain, what way he thought beft for us to manage a fight with them: for refit them I refolved we would, and that to the laft drop. He faid, readily, that the way was to keep them off with our great fhot as long as we could, and then to fire at them with our fmail arms, to keep them from boarding us; but when neither of thele would do any longer, we fhould retire to our


## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

clofe quarters : perhaps they had not materials to break open our bulk-heads,
or get in upon us.
The gunner had in the mean time orders to bring two guns to bear fore and aft out of the fteerage, to clear the deck, and load them with mufquetbullets and fmall pieces of old iron, and what next came to hand: and thus we made ready for fight ; but all this while kept out to fea with wind enough, and could fee the boats at a diffance, being five large long-boats following us with all the fail they could make.
Two of thefe boats, which, by our glaffes we could fee were Englifh, had out-failed the reft, were near two league -head of them, and gained upon us confiderably; fo that we found thich we fired a gun without a fhot, to in timate that they fhould bring to; and we put out a flag of truce, as a figna for parley; but they kept crouding orter us till they came within fhot. Upon this we took in our white flag, they having made no anfwer to it hung out the red flag, and fired at them with fhot. Notwithftanding this they came on till they were near enough for us to call to them with a rpeaking trumpet, which we had on board; fo we called to them, and bade them keep off at their peril.
It was all one, they crouded after us, and endeavoured to come under our itern, fo to board us in our quarter Upon which, feeing they were refolute for mifchief, and depending upon the frength that followed them, I ordered to bring the fhip to, fo that they lay upon our broadfide, when immediately we fired five guns at them; one of which had been levelled fo true as to carr away the fern of the hindermolt boat, and bring them to the necefinty of tak ing down their fail, and rumning all to the head of the boat to keep her from inking; io the lay by and had enough of it; but feeing the foremolt boat itil croud on after us, we made ready to fire at her in particular.

While this was doing, one of the three boats that was behind, being forwarder than the other two, made up to the boat which we had difabled, to relieve her, and we could afterward ee her take out the men. We called again to the foremolt boat, and offere a truce to parley again, and to know
what was her bufinefs with us; but had no anfwer; only the crouded clofe under our ftern. Upon this our gunner, who was a very dexterous fellow, run out his two chafe guns, and fired at her; but the fhot miffing, the men in the boat fhouted, waved ther caps, and came on ; but the gunner getting quickly ready again, fired among them a fecond time; one fhot of which, though it miffed the boat itfelf, yet fell in among the men, and we could eafily fee had done a great deal of minchief among them; but we, taking no notice of that, weared the fhip again, and brought our quarter to bear upon them, and firing three-guns more, we found the boat was iplit almoft to pieces; in particular, her rudder and a piece of her ftern was fhot quite sway; fo they handed their fail immediately, and were in great diforder; but to compleat their misfortune, our gunner let fly two guns at them again: where he hit them we could not tell, but we found the boat was finking, and fome of the men already in the water. Upon this I immediately manned out our pinnace, which we had kept clofe by our fide, with orders to pick up fome of the men, if they could, and fave them from drowning, and immediately to come on board with them; becaufe we faw the reft of the boats began to come up.: Our men in the pinnace followed their orders, and took up three men; one of which was juft drowning, and it was a good while before we could recover him. As foon as they were on board, we crouded all the fail we could make, and ftood farther out to fea; and we found, that when the other three boats came up to the firft two, they gave over their chace.
Being thus delivered from a danger, which, though I knew not the reafon of it, yet feemed to be much greater than I apprehended, I took care that we would change our courfe, and not let any one imagine whither we were going. So we ftood out to fea eaft ward, quite out of the courfe of all European fhips, whether they were bound to China, or any where elfe within the commerce of the European nation:.
When

When we were now at fea, we began to confult with the two feamen, and enquire firlt, what the meaning of
and not be hanged firft and judged all this fhould be. The Dutchman let and not us into the fecret of it at once, us, that the fellow that fhip, as we faid, was no more than a thief that had run away with her. Then he told us how the captain, whofe name too he mentioned, though I do not remember it now, was treacherouly murdered by the natives on the coalt of Malacca, with three of and that he, this Dutchman, and four more, got into the woods, where they wandered about a great while; till at length he in particular, in a miraculous manner, made his efcape, and fwam off to a Dutch ihip, which failing near the fhore, in it's way from China, had fent their boat on fliore for frefh water ; that he durit not come to that part of the fhore where the boat was, but made fhift in the night to tak in the water farther off, and fwim ming a great while, at laft the flip's boat took him up.
He then told us, that he went to Batavia, where two of the feamen belonging to the thip had arrived, having deferted the reft in their travels; and gave an account, that the fellow who had run away with the fhip fold her at Bengal to a let of pirates, which were gone a cruizing in her; and that they had already taken an Englifh fhip, and two Duch fhips, very richly saden.

This latter part we found to concern us directly, and though we knew it to be falfe, yet, as my partner caid very well, if we had fallen into their hands, and they had had fuch a prepoffeffion againft us beforehand, it had been in vain for us to have defended ourlelves, or to hope for any good quarters at their hands; efpecially confidering that our accufers had been our judges, and that we could have expected nothing from them but what rage would have dictated, and ungoverned paffion have executed. And therefore it was his opinion, that we flould go directly back to Bengal, from whence we came, without putting in at any port what ever; becaufe there we could give an account of ourfelves, and coulc prove where we were when the ihip put in, whom we bought her of, and the like, and, which was more than all the reft, if we were put to the neceffity of bringing it before the proper judges, we mould be fure to have fome juitice,
opinion ; but after a little more ferious thinking, I told him, I thought it was a very great hazard for us to attempt returning to Bengal, for that we were on the wrong fide of the Straits of Malacca; and that if the alarm was given, we frould be fure to be way-laid on every fide, as well by the Dutch of Batavia, as the Englifh. elfewhere; that if we fhould be taken, as it were running away, we fhould even condemn ourfelves, and there would want no more evidence to defroy us. I alfo afked the Englifh frilor's opinion, who 'faid he was of my mind, and that we fhould certainly be taken.
This danger a little fartled my parter, and all the fiip's company; and we immediately refolved to go away to the coaft of Tonquin, and fo on to China and from thence purluing the firt defign as to trade, find fome way frit defign as difpofe of the flip, and come back in fome of the veffels of the country, fuch as we could get. This was approved of as the beft methed for our fecurity; and accordingly thod feered away N. N. E. keeping abeve fifty leagues off from the ufual courfe to the ealtward.
This, however, put us to fome inFis, when we came to that diffance from the when feemed to be more fteadily againft thore, us, blowing Eaf and E. N. E. fo it, from were a long while upon our voyace; and we were but ill provided with rituals for fo long a run; and, which was ftill worfe, there was fome daner that thofe Englifh and Dutch aips who boats puriued us, wherehips, were bound that way, might be rot in before us ; and if not, fome ber bound to China, might have information of us from them, and purfue us with the fame vigour.

I muft confefs, I was now very unIf, and thought myfelf, including the late efape from the long-boats, to have been in the mof dangerous condition been ever I was in through all my paft life; for, whatever ill circumftances I had been in, I was never purfued for thief before; nor had I ever done any thing that merited the name of any thing that meried difhoneft
difhoneft or fraudulent, much lefs thievifh. I had chiefly been mine own enemy; or, as I may rightly fay, I had been nobody's enemy but my own. But now I was embarrafied in the worf condition imaginable; for though I was perfectly innocent, I was in no condition to make that innocence appear. And if I had been taken, it had been under a fuppofed giiilt of the wortt kind; at leaft, a crime efteemed fo among the people I had to do with.

This made me very anxious to make an efcape, though which way to do it I knew not, or what port or place we fhould go to. My partner, feeing me thus dejected, though he was the moft concerned at firf, began to encourage me; and defcribing to mé the feveral ports of that coalt, told me, he would put in on the coaft of Cochinchina, or the Bay of Tonquin; intending to go afterwards to Macao, a town once in the poffeftion of the Portugueze, and where ftill a great many European families refided; and particularly the miffionary priefts ufually went thither, in order to their going forward to China.

Hither then we refolved to ge; and accordingly, though after a tedious and irregular coinfe, and very much fraitened for provifions, we came within fight of the coaft very early in the morning; and, upon reflection upon the paft circumftances we were in, and the danger, if we had not efcaped, we refolved to put into a fmall river, which, however, had depth enough of water for us, and to fee if we could, either over land or by the flip's pinnace, come to know what fhips were in any port thereabouts. This happy ftep was indeed our deliverance; for though we did not immediately fee any European flips in the Bay of Tonquin, yet, the next morning, there came into the Bay two Dutch fhips, and a third without any colours foread out, but which we believed to be a Dutchman, paffed by at about two leagues diftance, fteering for the coaft of China; and in the afternoon went by two Englifh thips, fteering the fame coufe: and thus, we thought, we law ourfelves befet with enemies, both one way and the other. The place we were in was wild and barbarous, the people thieves even by otcupation or profeffion; and though, it is true, we had not much to feek of them, and,
excepting a few provifions, cared not how little we had to do with them yet it was with much difficulty that we kept ourfelves from being infulted by them feveral ways.

We were in a fmall river of this country, within a few leagues of it's utmoft limits northward; and by our boat we coafted north-eaft to the point of land which opens to the great Bay of Tonquin; and it was in this beat-ing-up along the fhore, that we difcovered as above, that, in a word, we were furrounded with enemies. 'The people we were among were the moft barbarous of all the inhabitants of the coalt; having no correfpondence with any other nation, and dealing only in fift and oil, and fuch grofs commodities. And it may be particularly feen that they are, as I faid, the molt barbarous of any of the inhabitants \% viz. that among other cuftoms they have this one, that if any veffel have the misfortune to be fhipwrecked upon their coaft, they prefently make the men all prifoners; that is to fay, flaves. And it was not long before we found a fpice of their kindnefs this way on the occalion following.

I have oblerved above, that our fhip fprung a leak at fea, and that we could not find it out ; and, however it happened, that, as I have faid, it was fopped unexpectedly, in the happy minute of our being to be feized by the Dutch and Englifh hips near the Bay of Siam; yet, as we did not find the fhip fo perfectly tight and found as we defired, we refolved, while we were in this place, to lay her on fhore, take out what heavy things we had on board, which were not many, and to wafh and clean her bottom, and, if poffible, to find out where the leaks were.
Accordingly, having lightened the mip, and biought all our guns and other moveable things to one fide, we tried to bring her down, that we might come at her bottom; for, on fecond thoughts, we did not care to lay her dry aground, neither could we find out a proper place for it.
'The inhabitants, who had never been acquainted with fuch a fight, came wondering down to the boore to look at us; and feeing the fhip lie down on one fide in fuch a manner, and heeling towards the fhore, and not feeing our men, who were at work on her bot-
tom with ftages, and with their boats on the off-fide, they prefently concluded, that the thip was caft aw.
lay fo very faft on the ground.

On this fuppofition they all came about us in two or three hours time, with ten or twelve large boats, having fome of them eight, fome ten men in a boat, intending, no doub, to have and if they had found us there, to have carried us away for flaves to their king, or whatever they called him, for we knew nothing who was their governor.

When they came up to the fhip, and began to row round her, they difcovered us all hard at work on the outfide of the fhip's bottom and fide, wafhing, and graving, and ftopping, as every feafaring man knows how.
They ftood for a while gazing at us ; and we, who were a little furprized, could not imagine what their defign was; but being willing to be fure, we took this opportunity to get fome of us into the fhip, and others to hand down arms and ammunition to thofe that were at work, to defend themfelves with if there fhould be occafion: and it was no more than need; for, in lefs than a quarter of an hour's confultation, they agreed, it feems, that the fhip was really a wreck; that we were all at work endeavouring to fave her, or to fave our lives by the help of our boats : and when we handed our arms into the boats, they concluded, by that motion, that we were endeavouring to fave fome of our goods. Upon this, they took it for granted they all belonged to them; and away they came directly upon our men, as if it had been in a line of battle.

Our men, feeing fo many of them, pegan to be frighted, for we lay but in an ill polture to figit, and cried out to us to know what they fhould do. I immediately called to the men who worked upon the ftages, to dip them down, and get up the fide into the fhip; and bade thofe in the boat to row round and come on board; and thofe few of us who were on board soorked with all the frength and hands we had to bring the fhip to rights ; but, however, neither the men upon the ftage, nor thofe in the boat's, could do as they were ordered, before the Cochinchinefe were upon them, and with two of their boats boarded our
long-boat, and began to lay hold of the men as their prifoners.

The firtt man they laid hold of was an Englifh feaman, a fout frong fellow, who having a mufquet in his hand, never offered to fire it, but laid it down in the boat like a fool, as I thought; but he underftood his bufinefs better than I could teach him; for he grappled the Pagan, and dragged him by main force out of their own boat into ours; where, taking him by the two ears, he beat his head fo againft the fhip's gunnel, that the fellow died inftantly in his hands: and in the mean time a Dutchman, who ftood next, took up the mufquet, and with the but-end of it fo laid about him, that he knocked dowir five of them who attempted to enter the boat; but this was little towards refifting thirty or forty men, who fearlefs, becaufe ignorant of their danger, began to throw themfelves into the long-boat, where we had but five men to defend it. But one accident gave our men a compleat victory, which deferved our laughter rather than any thing elle, and that was this.

Our carpenter being prepared to grave the outfide of the fhip, as well as to pay the feams where he had caulked her to ftop the leaks, had got two kettles juft let down into the boat, one filled with boiling pitch, and the other with rofin, tallow, and oil, and fach ftuff as the fhipwrights ufe for that work; and the man chat attended the carpenter had a great iron ladle in his hand, with which he fupplied the men that were at work with that hot fluff. Two of the enemy's men entered the boat juft where this fellow food, being in the fore theets; he immediately faluted them with a lacieful of the ftuff, boiling hot ; which fo burnt and fcalded them, being half naked, that they roared out like two bults, and enraged with the fire, leaped both into the fea. The carpenter faw it, and cried out, ' Well done, - Jack, give them fome more of it: when, ftepping forward himfelf, he takes one of their maps, and dipping it in the pitch-pot, he-and his men threw it among them fo plentifully, that, in mort, of all the men in three boats, there was not one that was not fealded and burned with it in a moft frightful pitiful manner, and made

## ROBINSON CRUSOE

wich a howling and crying, that I never heard a worfe noife, and, indeed, nothing like it ; for it was worth obferving, that though pain naturally makes all people cry out, yet every nation have a particulan way of exclamation, and make noifes as different from one another as their fpeech. I cannot give the noife thefe creatures made a better name than howling, nor a name more proper to the tone of it; for I never heard any thing more like the noife of the wolves, which, as I have faid, I heard howl in the foreft on the frontiers of Languedoc.
I was never pleafed with a victory betrer in my life; not only as it was a perfect furpnize to me, and that our swe got this victory without any blood we got this victory wiout any bloodhed, except of that man the fellow which I was very much concerned at ; for I was fick of killing fuch poor favage wretches, even thouch it was in my own defence, knowing they came on errands which they thought juft, and knew no better; and that though it may be a joft thing, becaufe nectflary, (for there is no neceflary wickednefs in nature) yet I thought it was a fad life when we muff be always obliged to be killing our fellowcreatures to preferve oulfelves; and, indeed, I think fo ftill; and I would even now fuffer a great deal rather than would take away the life even of the wort perfon injuring me . 1 beknow the value of life, peopie, who my in if of life, pould be of my opimion, But to return to my while this was doing my. All the I , who managed the reit partner and on board, had, with oreat dexterity brought the fhip almoft to richts. and having gotten their guns into their places again, the gumier called to places again, the gumier called to
me to bid our boat get out of the way, for he would let fly among them. 1 called back again to him, and bid him not offer to fire, for the carpenter would do the work without him; but bade him heat another pitch-kette, which our cook, who was on board, took care of. But the enemy was fo terrified whth what they met with in their fint attack, that they would not come on again ; and fome of them that
were fartheft off, feeing the fhip fwim as it were upright, began, as we fuppofed, to fee their miftake, and gave over the enterprize, finding it was not as they expected. Thus we got clear of this merry fight; and having gotten fome rice, and fome roots and bread, with about fixteen good big hogs on board two days before, we refolved to ftay here no longer, but go forward, whatever came of it; for we made no doubt but we fhould be furrounded the next day with rogues enough, perhaps more than our pitchWettle would difpofe of for us.
We therefore got all our things on board the fame evening, and the next morning were ready to fail. In the miftance from the at an anchor fome fo much concerned, being wow inot fighting poiture, as well os in filin polture, if any enemy had a failing The next day, having finithed work within board, and findin our fhip was perfectly healed of ain our leaks, we fet fail. We would have gone into the Bay of Tonquin, for we wanted to iaform ourfelves of what was to be known concerning the Dutch thips that had been there; but we durft not itand in there, becaufe we had feen feveral fhips go in, as we fuppofed, but a little before fo we kept on N.E. towards the ine of Formofa, as much afraid of being feen by a Dutch or Englifh merchantfhip, as a Dutch or Englifh merchantThip in the Mediterranean is of an Agerine man of war.
When we were thus got to fea, we kept on N.E. as if we would go to the Manillas or the Philippine iflands, fall into we did that we might no pean fhips; and then we of the European flips; and then we feered riorth 22 degrees 22 degrees 20 minutes, by which means ly, where we came to ormofa directorder to get water and frefh provifions order to get water and frefh provifions, which the people there, who are very fupplied us with willingly, and dealt very fairly and punctually with us in all their agreements and bargains; which is what we did not find amons other people, and may be owing to the remains of Chriftianity which was once planted here by a Dutch mift
fonary
fonary of Proteftants, and is a teftimony of what I have often obferved; viz. that the Chrifian religion always civilizes the people, and reforms ther manners, when them or it wo.
no. no.
From hence we failed fill north, keeping the coalt of China at an equal ditance, till we ports of China where our yond all the ports ufually come; being Europed, if poffible, not to fall into any of their hands, efpecially in this country, where, as our circumftances were, we could not fail of being entirely ruined; nay, fo great was my fear in particular, as to my being taken by them, that I believe firmly, I would much rather have chofen to fall into the hands of the Spanifh inquifition.
Being now come to the latitude of 30 de siees, we were refolved to put into the firft trading port we fhould come at ; and, ftanding in for the fhore, a boat came off two leagues to us, with an old Portugueze pilot on board, who, knowing us to ropean fhip, came to offer his rervice, which, indeed, we were very glad of, and took him on board: upon would without alking us wis go, he difmina the bot and fent it back.

I thought it was now fo much iu our choice to make the old man carry us whither we would, that ing us to the Gulph of Nanquin, which is the molt Gulph of Nanquin, which part of the coaft of China. The old man faid he knew the Gulph of Nanquin very well; but, fimiling, afked us, what we would do there.
I told him we would fell our cargo, and purchafe China wares, callicoes, raw filks, tea, wrought filks, \&cc. and fo would return by the fame courfe we came. He told us our beft port had been to have put in at Macao, wher we could not fail of a market for our opium to our fatisfaction, and might, for our money, have purchaled all forts of China goods as cheap as we could at Nanquin.
Not being able to put the old man out of his talk, of which he was very opiniated or conceited, I told him we were gentleman as well as maerchants; and that we had a mind
go and fee the great city of Pekin, and the famous court of the Monarch of China. 'Why then,' fays the old man, ' you fhould go to Ningpo, where, - by the river that runs into the fea ' there, you may go up within This 6 leagues of the great canal, which canal is a navigable made lieal, that valt goes through the heart of the rivers, empire of Cnina, crones hills by the paffes fome connderables, and goes up help of nuices and gates, and in length to the city of Pek feventy leagues. near two hundred ' Seignior Portu-- Well,' faid I, ' gueze, the great queftion is, if you now. The great queltion can carry us up to the city travel to quin, he could do fo very well, and there was a great Dutch fhip gone up that way juft before. This gave me a little fhock; a Dutch fhip was now our terror, and we had much rather have met the devil, at lealt if he had not come in too frightful a figure. We depended upon it, that a Dutch flip would be our dettruction, for we were in no condition to fight them; all the fhips they trade with in thole parts being of great burden, and of much greater force than we were.
The old man found me a little confufed, and under fome concern, when he named a Dutch Thip; and faid to me, 'Sir, you need be under no ap-- prehenfion of the Dutch; I fuppofe they are not now at war with your nation.- ' No,' faid I, ' that's true; butl know not what liberties men may 6 take when they are out of the reach of the laws of their own country: -' Why' faid he, ' you are no pi6 rates, what need you fear? They
' will not meddle with peaceable merchants, fure:
If I had any blood in my body that did not fly up into my face at that word, it was the veinted by nature to circulate it. for it put me into the greateft diforder and confufion imacinable eft diorder andible for me to conceal is fo, but that the old man eafily perfo, but t
ceived it.
' Sir,' faid he, ' I find you are in fome diforder in your thoughts at my - talk: pray be pleafed to go whicb - way you think fit; and, depend upon

- it, Ill do you all the fervice I can. -' Why, Seignior,' faid 1 , ' it is © true, I am a little unfettled in my - refolution at this time whither to go - in particular; and I am fomething ${ }_{6}$ more fo, for what you faid about x pirates. I hope there are no pirates - in thefe feas ! we are but in an ill condition to meet with them; for - you fee we have but a finall force, - and but very weakly manned.
' O! Sir,' faid he, 'f do not be co
cerned, I do not know that there 6 have been any pirates in thefe feas - thefe fifteen years, except one, which - was feen, as I hear, in the Bay of - Siam about a month fince; but - you may be affured the is gone to 4. the fouthward: nor was fhe a mip 6 of any great force, or fit for the - work; the was not built for a pri6 vateer, bnt was run away with by a 6 reprobate crew that were on board, * after the captain and fome of his men
* had been murdered by the Malac-
${ }_{6}$ cans, at or near the ifland of Su' matra.'
- What!' faid I, feeming to know nothing of the matter, ' did they mur-- der the captain ?'- No,' faid he, E Ido not underftand that they mur-- dered him; but, as they afterwards 6 ran away with the fhip, it is gene-- rally believed they betrayed him into - the hands of the Malaccans, who ${ }^{6}$ did murder him; and, perhaps, they 'procured them to do it.'-' Why ' then,' faid I, ' they deferve death, 6 as much as if they had done it them' felves.' - Nay,' faid the old man, - they do deferve it; and they will certanly have it, if they light upon
- any Englith or Dutch Rlip; for they
- have all agreed together, that if they
meet that rogue, they will give him
no quarter.'
'But,' faid I to him, 'you fay - the pirate is gone out of thefe feas: - how can they meet with him then ? - Why, that is true,' faid he, 'they - do fay fo; but he was, as I tell you, - in the Bay of Siam, in the river Cam-- bodia, and was difcovered there by - fome Đutchmen who belonged to
- the thip, and who were left on thore - when they run away with her; and - fome Englifh and Dutch traders be-- ing in the river, they were within a - little of taking him. Nay,' faid he, - if the foremole boats had been well
- feconded by the reff, they had cer-- tainly taken him; but he, finding - only two boats within reach of him, 6 tacked about, and fired at thefe two, : and difabled them before the other - came up; and then flanding off to fea, the other were not able to follow him, and fo he got away. But - they have all fo exact a defcription 6 of the fhip, that they will be fure to 6 know him; and wherever they find 6 him, they have vowed to give no quarter to either the captain or the - feamen, but to hang them all up at the yard-arm.
' What!' faid I, ' will they exe6 cute them right or wrong, hang them - firft, and judge them afterwards ?' 6 O! Sir,' faid the old pilot, 'there is - no need to make a formal bufinefs - of it with fuch rogues as thofe; let - them tie them back to back, and fer - them a diving; it is no more than they rightly deferve.
I knew I had my old man faft aboard, and that he could do me no harm; fo that I turned fhort upon him - Well, now, Seignior,' faid I, ' and ' this is the very reafon why I would - have you carry us to Nanquin, and not to put back to Macao, or to any other part of the country where - the Englifh or Dutch fhips come; - for, be it known to you, Seignior, - thofe captains of the Englifh and - Dutch flips are a parcel of rafh, - proud, infolent fellows, that nei-- ther know what belongs to juftice, - or how to behave themfelves as the - laws of God and nature direct; but - being proud of their offices, and not - undertanding their power, they 6 would act the murderers to punifh - robbers; would take upon them to - infult men falfely accufed, and de6 termine them guilty without due en-- quiry ; and perhaps I may live to call fome of them to an account for it, where they may be taught how - juftice is to be executed, and that no man ought to be treated as a cri-- minal, till fome evidence may be had ' ' of the crime, and that he is the 'man.

With this I told him, that this was the very fhip they had attacked; and gave him a full account of the ikirmifh we had with their boats, and how foolinly and coward-like they had behaved. I told him all the flory of our
buying the Thip; and how the Dutchmen ferved us. I told him the reafons I had to believe, that this fory of killing the mafter by the Malaccans was not true, as alfo the running away with the fhip; but that it was all a fiction of their own, to fuggeft that the men were turned pirates; and they ought to have been fure it was fo, before they had ventured to attack us by furprize, and oblige us to refift them; adding, that they would have the blood of thofe men who were killed there, in our juft defence, to anfwer for.
The old man was amazed at this relation; and told us, we were very much in the right to go away to the north; and that if he might advife us, it thould be to fell the thip in China, which we might very well do, and buy or build another in the country. - And,' faid he, "' though you will - not get fo good a fhip, yet you may - get one able enough to carry you 6 and all your goods back again to - Bengal, or any where elfe.

I told him, I would take his advice, when I came to any port where I could find a fhip for my turn, or get any cuftomer to buy this. He replied, I thotild meet with cultomers enough for the fhip at Nanquin, and that a Chinefe junk would ferve me very well to go back again; and that he would procure me people both to buy one and fell the other.
' Well, but, Seignior,' fays I, 'as 6 you fay they know the fhip fo well, - I may, perhaps, if I follow your meafures, be inftrumental to bring - fome honeft, innocent men into a - terrible broil, and perhaps be mur${ }^{6}$ dered in cold blood; for wherever 6 they find the fhip, they will prove - the guilt upon the men, by proving this was the Jhip; and fo innocen - men may probably be overpowered ' and murdered.'- 'Why,' faid the old man, ' I'll find out a way to pre© vent that alfo; for as I know all - thofe commanders you fpeak of very ${ }^{6}$ well, and fhall fee them all as they - pafs by, I will be fure to fet them - to rights in the thing, and let them - know, that they bad been fo much in the wrong, that though the people - who were on board at firft might
${ }^{8}$ run away with the fhip, yet it was
6 not true that they had turned pirates;
and that in particular, thofe were not the men that firlt went off with the Mip, but innocently bought her - for their trade; and I am perfuaded they will fo far believe me, as, at leatt, to ast more cautioufly for the ' time to come. - 'Well,' faid 1 , ' and will you deliver one meflage to them from me?'- 'Yes, I will,' fays he, ' if you will give it under your hand in writing, that I may be able to prove it came from you, and not out of my own head.' I anfwered, that I would readily give it under my hand. So I took a pen, and ink, and paper, and wrote at large the ftory of affaulting me with the long-boats, \&c. the pretended reafon of it, and the unjuft cruel defign of it; and concluded to the commanders, that they had done what they not only fhould have been afhamed of, butallo, that if ever they came to England, and I lived to fee them there, they fhould all pay dearly for it, if the laws of my country were not grown out of ufe before I arrived there.

My old pilot read this over and over again, and afked me feveral times, if I would ftand to it. I anfwered, I would fand to it as long as I had afy thing left in the world; being fenfible that I fhould; one time or other, find an opportunity to put it home to them. But we had no occafion ever to let the pilot carry this letter; for he never went back again. While thofe things were paffing between us by way of difcourfe, we went'forward directly for Nanquin; and, in about thirteen days fail, came to an anchor at the fouthwelt point of the great Gulph of Nanquin; where, by the way; I came by accident to underftand, that the two Dutch fhips were gone that length before me, and that I fhould certainly fall into their hands. I coniulted my partner again in this exigency, and he was as much at a lofs as I was, and would very gladly have been fafe on fhore almoft any where. However, I was not in fuch perplexity neither, but I aiked the old pilot if there was no creek or harbour which I might put into, and purfue my bufinefs with the Chinefe privately, and be in no danger of the enemy. He told me, if I would fail to the fouthward about two and forty leagues, there was a little port called Quinchang, where the fathers of
the miffion ufually landed from Macao, on their progrefs to teach the Chriftian religion to the Chinefe, and where no European fhips ever put in; and, if I thought proper to put in there, I might confider what farther courfe to take when I was on fhore. He confeffed, he faid, it was not a place for merchants, except that at fome certain times they had a kind of a fair there, when the merchants from Japan came over thither to buy the Chinefe merchandizes.
We all agreed to go back to this place. The name of the port, as he called it, I may perhaps feell wrong; for I do not particularly remember it, having lof this, together with the names of many other places fet down in my little pocket-book, which was fpoiled by the water, on an accident which I flall relate in it's order ; but this I remember, that the Chinefe or Japanefe merchants we correfpond with, call it by a different name from that which our Portugueze pilot gave it, and pronounced it as above, Quinchang.
As we were unanimous in our refolutions to go to this place, we weighed the next day, having only gone twice on fhore, where we were to get frefh water; on both which occafions, the people of the country were very civil to us, and brought us abundance of things to fell to us; I mean, of provifions, plants, roots, tea, rice, and fome fowls; but nothing without money.

We came to the other port (the swind being contrary) not till five days; but it was very much to our fatisfaction; and I was joyful, and I may fay thankful, when I fet my foot fafe on fhore; refolving, and my partner too, that if it was poffible to difpofe of ourfelves and effects any other way, though not every way to our fatisfaction, we would never fet one foot on board that unhappy veffel more; and, indeed, I muft acknowledge, that of all the circumftances of life that ever I had any experience of, nothing makes mankind fo compleatly miferable as that of being in conftant fear. Well does the Scripture fay, "The - fear of man brings a fnare;' it is a life of death; and the mind is fo entirely fuppreffed by it, that it is capable of no relief; the animal fpirits
fink, and all the vigour of nature, which ufually fupports men under other afflictions, and is prefent to them in the greatelt exigencies, fails them here.
Nor did it fail of it's ufual opera tions upon the fancy, by heightening every danger; reprefenting the Englifh and Dutch captains to be men incapable of hearing reafon, or diftinguifhing between honeft men and rogues; or between a fory calculated for our own turn, made out of nothing, on purpofe to deceive, and a true genuine account of our whole voyage, progrefs, and defign ; for we might many ways have convinced any reafonable creature that we were not pirates : the goods we had on board, the courfe we fteered, our frankly fhewing ourfelves, and entering into fuch and fuch ports; even our very manner, the force we had, the number of men, the few arms, little amunition, fhort provifions; all thefe would have ferved to convince any man that we were no pirates. The opium, and other goods we had on board, would make it appear the fhip had been at Bengal; the Dutchmen, who, it was faid, had the names of all the men that were in the flip, might eafily fee, that we were a mixture of Englifh, Portugueze, and Indians, and but two Dutchmen on board. Thefe, and many other particular circumftances, might have made it evident to the underflanding of any commander, whofe hands we might fall into, that we were no pirates.
But fear, that blind, ufelef's paffion, worked another way, and threw us into the vapours; it bewildered our underftandings, and fet the imagination at work, to form a thoufand terrible things that, perhaps, might never happen. We firit fuppofed, as indeed every body had related to us, that the feamen on board the Englifh and Dutch fhips, but efpecially the Dutch, were fo enraged at the name of a pirate, and efpecially at our beating of their boats, and efcaping, that they would not give themfelves leave to enquire whether we were pirates or no ; but would execute us off hand, as we call it, without giving us any room for a defence. We reflected, that there was really fo much apparent evidence bèfore them, that they would fcarce enquire after any more : as, firft, That the
thip

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

Ghip was certainly the fame, and that fome of the feamen among them knew her, and had been on board her; and, fecondly, That when we had intelligence at the river Cambodia, that they were coming down to examine us, we fought their boats and fled; fo that we made no doubt but they were as fully fatisfied of our being pirates, as we were fatisfied of the contrary; and I often faid, I knew not but I mould have been apt to have taken thefe little circumfances for evidence, if the tables were turned, and my cafe was theirs; and have made no fcruple of cutting all the crew to pieces, without believing, or perhaps confidering, what they might have to offer in their defence.
But let that be how it will, thofe were our apprehenfions; and both my partner and I too fcarce flept a night without dreaming of halters and yardarms ; that is to lay, gibbets; of fighting, and being taken : of killing, and being killed: and one night I was in fuch a fury in my dream, fancying the Dutchmen had boarded us, and I was knocking one of their feamen down, that I fruck my double fift againft the fide of the cabin I lay in with fuch force as wounded my hand molt grievoufly, broke my knuckles, and cut and bruifed the fleff; fo that it not only waked me out of my fleep, but I was once afraid I thould have loft two of my fingers.

Another apprehenfion I had, was of the cruel ufage we fhould meet with from them if we fell into their hands. Then the ftory of Amboyna came into my head, and how the Dutch might, perhaps, torture us, as they did our countrymen there, and make fome of our men, by extremity of torture, confefs thofe crimes they never were guilty of; own themfelves, and all of us, to be pirates; and fo they would put us to death with a formal appearance of jultice; and that they might be tempted to do this for the gain of our thip and cargo, which was worth four or five thoufand pounds put all together.

Thefe things tormented me, and my partner too, night and day; nor did we confider, that the captains of fhips have no authority to act thus; and if we had furrendered prifoners to them, they could not anfwer the deftroying us or torturing us, but would be ac-
countable for it when they came into their own country. This, I fay, gave me no fatisfaction; for, if they will act thus with us, what advantage would it be to us that they would be called to an account for it; or, if we were firlt to be murdered, what fatiffaction would it be to us to have them punifhed when they came home.
I cannot refrain taking notice here, what reflections I now had upon the palt variety of my particular circumftances; how hard I thought it was, that $I$, who had fent forty years in a life of continued difficulties, and was at laft come, as it were, at the port or haven which all men drive at, viz. to have reft and plenty, fhould be a volunteer in new forrows by my own unhappy choice; and that I, who had efcaped fo many dangers in my youth, fhould now come to be hanged in my old age, and in fo remote a place, for a crime I was not in the leaft inclined to, much lefs guilty of; and in a place and circumftance, where innocence was not like to be any protection at all to me.
After thefe thoughts, fomething of religion would come in; and I would be confidering, that this feemed to me to be a difpofition of immediate Providence, and I ought to look upon it, and fubmit to it, as fuch; that al though I was innocent as to men, I was far from being innocent as to my Maker; and I ought to look in, and examine what other crimes in my life were moft obvious to me, and for which Providence might juftly inflict this punifhment as a retribution; and that I ought to fubmit to this, juft as I would to a fhipwreck, if it had pleafed God to have brought fuch a difafter upon me.

In it's turn, natural courage would fometimes take it's place; and then I would be talking myfelf up to vigorous refolutions, that I would not be taken, to be barbaroufly ufed by a parcel of mercilel's wretches in cold blood; that it was much better to have fallen into the hands of the favages, who were men-eaters, and who, I was fure, would feaft upon me when they had taken me, than by thofe who would, perhaps, glut their rage upon me, by inhuman tortures and barbarities; that, in the cafe of the favages, I always refolved to die fighting, to the

K k 2

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

laft gafp; and why fhould I not do fo now, feeing it was much more dreadful to me, at leaf, to think of falling into thefe men's hands, than ever it was to think of being eaten by men: for the favages, give them their due, would not eat a man till he was dead, and killed him firit, as we do a bullock; but that thefe men had many. arts beyond the cruelty of death. Whenever thefe thoughts prevailed, I was fure to put myfelf into a kind of fever, with the agitations of a fuppofed fight; my blood would boil, and my eyes fparkled, as if i was engaged; and I always refolved, that I would take no quarter at their hands; but even, at laft, if I could refift no longer, I would blow up the fhip, and all that was in her, and leave them but little booty to boaft of.
But how much the greater weight the anxicties and perplexities of thefe things were to our thoughts while we were at fea, by fo much the greater was our fatisfaction when we faw ourfelves on fhore ; and my partner told me, he dreamed that he had a very heavy load upon his back, which he was to carry up a hill, and found that he was not able to ftand long under it; but the Poutugueze pilot came and took it off his back, and the hill difappeared, the ground before him thewing all frooth and plain. And truly it was $f 0$, we were all like men w had a load taken off their backs.

For my part, I had a weight taken off from my heart, that I was not able any ionger to bear; and, as I faid above, we refolved to go no more to Sea in that Mip. When we came on Thore, the old pilot, who was now our friec $f$, got us a lodging, and a warehoufe for our goods, which, by the way, was much the lame; it was a Jitule houfe or hut, with a large houfe joining to it, all built with canes, and pallifadoed round with larges canes, to keep out pilfering thieves, of which it feems there were not a few in the country. However, the magiftrates allowed us alfo a little guard, and we had a foldier with a kind of balbert or halfTpike, who ftood centinel at our door; to whom we allowed a pint of rice, and a little piece of money, about the yalue of three pence per day, fo that our goods were kept very fare.

The fair or mart, ufually kept in this place, had been over fome time ; however, we found that there were three or four junks in the river, and two Japaners, I mean, flips from Japan, with goods which they had bought: in China, and were not gone away, having Japanefe merchants on fhore.

The firf thing our old Portugueze pilot did for us, was to bring us acquainted with three mifionary Romilh priefts, who were in the town, and who had been there fome time, converting the people to Chriftianity; but we thought they made but poor work of it, and made them but forry Chriftians when they had done. However, that was not our bufinefs. One of thefe was a Frenchman, whom they called Father Simon : he was a jolly, well-conditioned man, very free in his converfation, not feeming fo ferious and grave as the other two did; (one of whom was a Portugueze, and the other a Genoefe) but Father Simon was courteous, eafy in his manner, and very a ceable conipany, the other two very agreeable company; the other two were more refcrved, leemed rigid and auftere, and applied terioufly to the work they came about; viz. to talk with and ininuate themfelves among the inhabitants, wherever they had opportunity. We often eat and drank with thofe men; and though I muft confels the converfion, as they call it, of the Chinefe to Chriftianity, is fo far from the true converfion required to bring heathen people to the faith of Chrit, that it feems to amount to little more than letting them know the name of Chrift, fay fome prasers to the Virgin Mary and her Son in a tongue which they underftand not, and to crois themfelves, and the like; yet it muft be confeffed, that thefe religious, whom we, call miffionaries, have a firm belief that thefe people fhall be faved, and that they are the inftruments of it ; and, on this account, they undergo not only the fatigue of the voyage, and hazards of living in fuch places, but oftentimes death itfelf, with the moft violent tortures, for the fake of this work; and it would be a great want of charity in us, whatever opinion we have of the work itfelf, and the manner of their doing it, if we fhould not have a good opinion of their zeal, who undertake it
with fo many hazards, and who have no profpect of the leait temporal ad vantage to themfelves.

But to return to my fory. This French prieft, Father Simon, was appointed, it feems, by order of of the miffion, to go up to Pekin, the royal feat of the Cininefe emperor; and waited only for another prielt, who was ordered to come to him from Macao, to go along with him; and we farce ever met together, but he was imving me to go that journey with him, lel, ing rue, how he would fhew me all the glorious things of that mighty empire; and among the reft, the greateft city in the world. A city, laid he, G that your London, and our Paris, - put togerher, cannot be equal to. This was the city of Pekin; which, I confefs, is very great, and infiniteiy full of people; but, as I looked on thofe things with different eyes from other men, fo I mall give my opinion of them in few words, when I come, in the courfe of my thavels, to fpeak more paricularly of them.

But firft, I come to iny friar or miffionary. Dining with him one day, and being very merry together, I thewed ome little inclination to go with him; and he preffed me and my partner very hard, and with a great many perfuafions, to confent. 'Why, 'Father Simon,' fays my partner, If why fhould you defire our company ( fo much? You know we are here6 ticks, and you do not love us, nor - can keep us company with any plea-- fure.'- O!' fays he, ${ }^{6}$ you may, - perhaps, be good Catholicks in time ; - my bulinefs here is to convert hea-- thens; and who knows but 1 may 6 convert you too ?'- 'Very well, Fa' ther,' faid I, ' fo you will preach - to us all the -way. - I I won't be - troublefome to you,' faid he; ' our - religion does not diveft us of good 6 manners : befides,' faid he, 'we are ${ }^{3}$ here like countrymen; and fo we - áre, compared to the place we are 6 in; and if you are Hugonots, and I - a Catholick, we may beall Chriftians 6 at laft; at leaft,' faid he, ' we are all - gentlemen, and we may converfe fo, - without being uneafy to one another.' I liked that part of his difcourfe very well, and it began to put me in mind of my prieft that Ihad left in the Brazils'; but this Father Simon did not
come up to his character by a great deal; for though Father Simon had no appearance of a criminal levity in him neither, yet he had not that fund of Chriftian zeal, frrict piety, and fincere affection to religion, that my other good ecclefiaftick had of whom I have faid fo much.

But to leave him a little, though he never left us, nor foliciting us to go with him, but we had fomething elfe hefore us at that time; for we had, all this while, our hip and our merchandize to difpofe of; and we began to be very doubtful what we fhould do, for we were now in a place of very little bufinefs; and once I was about to venture to fail for the river of Ki lam, and the city of Nanquin. But Providence feemed now more vifibly, as I thought, than ever, to concern itfelf in our affairs; and I was encouraged from this very time to think I thould, one way or other, get out of this entangled circumitance, and be brought home to my own country again; though I had not the leaft view of the manner; and when I began fometimes to think of it, could not amaine by what method it was to be done Providence, I fay, began here done.. Providence, to clear our way a little; and the to clear up our way a little; and the firft thing that offered was, that our old Portugueze pilot brought a Japan merchant to us, who began to enquire what goods we had; and, in the firit place, he bought all our opium, and gave us a very good price for it, paying us in gold by weight, fome in fimall pieces of their own com, and fome in fmall wedges of about ten or eleven ounces each. While we were dealing with him for our opium, it came into my head, that he might perhaps deal with us for the fhip too; and I ordered the interpreter to propofe it to him. He fhrunk up his fhoulders at it when it was firft propofed to him, but, in a few days after, he came to me with one of the miffionary priefts for his interpreter, and told me he had for his io make to me he had ivas this. He bad to me, and that quantity of goods of us when he had no thoughts (or propofals made to him) of buying the flip; and that, there fore he had not money enough to for the bip; but if I would let the fame men who were in the fhip navigate her, he would hire the mip to go
to Japan, and would fend them from ffence to the Philippine Ifands with another loading, which he would pay the freight of before they went from Japan; and that, at their return, he would buy the thip. I began to liften to this propofal, and fo eager did my head fill run upon rambling, that I could not but begin to entertain a notion myfelf of going with him, and fo to fail from the Philippine Iflands away to the South Seas ; and accordingly I atked the Japanefe merchant, if he would not hire us to the Philippine Iflands, and difcharge us there. He faid, no, he could not do that; for then he could not have the return of lis cargo; but he would difcharge us in Japan, he faid, at the fhip's return. Well, ftill I was for taking him at that propofal, and going myfelf; but my partner, wifer than myfelf, perfuaded me from it, reprefenting the dangers, as well of the feas as of the Japanefe, who are a falfe, cruel, and treacherous people; and then of the Spaniards at the Philippines, more falfe, more cruel, more treacherous than they.

But to bring this long turn of our affairs to a conclufion; the firft thing we had to do, was to confult with the captain of the Mhip, and with the men, and know if they were willing to go to Japan; and, while I was doing this, the young man, whom, as I faid, my nephew had left with mie as iny companion for my travels, came to me, and told me, that he thought that voyage promifed very fair, and that there was a great profpect of advantage, and he would be very glad if I undertook it; but that if I would not, and would give him leave, he would go as a merchant, or how I pleafed to exder him; that if ever he came to England, and I was there and alive, he would render me a faithful account of his fuecefs, and it fhould be as much mine as I pleafed.
I was really loth to part with him; but, confidering the profpect of adwantage, which was really confiderable, and that he was a young fellow as likely to do well in it as any I knew, $I$ inclined to let him go; but, firt, I told him I would contult my partner, and give him an anfwer the next day. My partner and I difcourfed about it; and my parther made a molt generous
offer. He told, me, " You know it has 6 been an unlucky flip, and we both - refolve not to go to fea in it again; if - your fteward' (fo he called my man) 6 will venture the voyage, I'll leave 6 my fhare of the veffel to him, and - let him make the beft of it; and if 6 let him make the beft of it; and if

- we live to meet in England, and he - meets with fuccefs abroad, he fhall - account for one half of the profits of 6 the Mip's freight to us, the other - flall be his own.'

If my partner, who was no way concerned with my young man, made him fuch an offer, I could do no lefs thian offer him the fame; and all the hip's company being willing to ga with him, we made over half the flip to him in property, and took a writing from him, obliging him to account for the other; and away he went to Japan. The Japan merchant proved a very punctual honeit man to him, protected him at Japan, and got him a licence to come on fhore, which the Europeans in general have not lately obtained; paid him his freight very punetually, fent him to the Philippines, loaded with Japan and China wares, and a fupercargo of their own, who traffick ing with the Spaniards, broughs back European goods again, and a great quantity of cloves and other fpice; and there he was not only paid his freight very well, and at a very good price, but being not willing to dell the thip then, the merchant furnifhed him with goods on his own account, that, for fome money, and fome fpices of his own, which he brought with him, he went back to the Manillas, to the Spaniards, where he fold his cargo very well. Here, having gotten a good acquaintance at Manilla, he got his fhip made a free fhip; and the Governor of Manilla hired him to go to Acapulco in America, on the coaft of Mexico, and gave him a licence to land there, and travel to Mexico, and to pafs in any Spanifh flip to Europe with all his men.
He made the voyage to Acapulgo very happily, and there he fold his Ship; and having there alfo obtained allowance to travel by land to Porto Bello, he found means, fome how or other, to go to Jamaica with all his treafure; and, about eight years after, came to England exceeding rich; of
which I fhail take notice in it's place. In the mean time, particular affairs.
Being now to part with the fhip and flip's company, it came before us, of courfe, to confider what recompence we fhould give to the two men that gave us fuch timely notice of the defign againt us in the river Cambodia. The truth was, they had done us a confiderable fervice, and deferved well at our hands; though, by the way, they were a couple of rogues too; for, as they believed the fory of our being pirates, and that we had really run away with the fhip, they came down to us, not only to betray the defign that was formed againit us, but to go to fea with us as pirates; and one of shem confefled afterwards, that nothing elfe but the hopes of going a roguing brought him to do it. Howover, the fervice they did us was not the lefs; and therefore, as I had promifed to be grateful to them, I firt ordered the money to be paid to them, which they faid was due to them on board their refpective fhips; that is to fay, the Englifhmen nineteen monthis pay, and to the Dutchmen feven; and, over and above that, I gave each of them a fimall fum of money in gold, -which contented them very well; then I made the Englifhman gunner of the fhip, the gunner being now made fecond mate and purfer; the Dutchman I made boatfwain; fo they were both very well pleafed, and proved very ferviceable, being both able feamen and very fout fellows.

We were now on thore in China. If I thought myfelf banifhed, and remate from my own country at Bengal, where I had many ways to get home for my money, what could I think of myfelf now, when I was gotten about a thoufand leagues farther off from home, and perfectly deffitute of all manner of profpect of return!

All we had for it was this; that in about four months time there was to be another fair at that place where we were, and then we might be able to purchafe all forts of the manufactures of the country, and withal might poffibly find fome Chinefe junks or veffels from Nanquin that would be to be fold, and would carry us and our goods whither we pleafed. This I liked very well, and refolved to wait ; befides,
as our particular perfons were not obnoxious, fo if any Englifh or Dutch fhips came thither, perhaps we might have an opportunity to load our goodsx and get paffage to fome other place in India nearer home.

Upon thefe hopes we refolved to continue here; but to divert ourfelves, we took two or three journies into the country. Firft, we went ten days journey to fee the city of Nanquin, a city well worth feeing indeed; they fay it has a million of people in it, which, however, I do not believe. It is regulacly built, the freets all exact:y trajght? and crofs one another in direct lues, which gives the figure of it great advantage.

But when I came to compare the miferable people of thefe countries with ours ; their fabricks, their manner of living, their government, theis religion, their wealth, and their olory (as fome call it) I muft confefs I do not fo much as think it worth naining, or worth my while to write of, or ang that fhall come after me to read.

It is very obfervable, that we wonder at the grandeur, the riches, the pomp, the ceremonies, the government, the manufactures, the commerce, and the conduct of the ere people; not that it is to be wondered at, or, 12 deed, in the leaft to be regarded ; bue becaule, having firft a notion of the barbarity of thofe countries, the radenefs and the ignorance that prevail there, we do not expeet to find any fuch things fo far off.
Otherwife, what are their buildings to the palaces and rayal buildings of Eurow? what their trade to the univerfal commerce of England, Holland, France and Spain? What their cities to ours, for wealth, firength, gaiety of apparel, rich furniture, and an infinite variety? What are their ports, fupplied with a few junks and barks, to our navigation, our merchants fleets, our large and powerful navies? Our city of London has more trade than all their mighty empire. One Englik, or Dutch, or French man of war of 80 guns, would fight with and deltroy all the fhipping of China. But the greatnefs of their wealth, their trade, the power of their government, and frength of their armies, is furprizing to us, becaufe, as I liave faid, confiderng them as a barbarous nation of pagans, fitic
better than fâvages, we did not expect fuch things among them; and this, indeed, is the advantage with which all their greatnefs and power is reprefented to us; otherwife it is in itfelf nothing at all: for, as I have faid of their fhips, fo it may be faid of their armies and troops; all the forces of their empire, though they were to bring two millions of men into the field together would be able to do nothing but ruin the country and ftarve themfelves. If they were to befiege a ftrong town in Flanders, or to fight a difciplined army, one line of German cuiraffiers, or of French cavalry, would overthrow all the horfe of China; a million of their foot could not ftand before one embattled body of our infantry, polted to as not to be furrounded, though they were not to be one to twenty in number; nay, I do not boaft if I fay, that thirty thoufand German or Englifh foot, and ten thoufand French horfe, would fairly beat all the forces of China. And fo of our fortified towns, and of the art of our engineers, in affaulting and defending towns there is not a fortified town in China could hold out one month againft the baiteries and attacks of an European army; and at the fame time all the armies of China could never take fuch a town as Dunkirk, provided it was not farved; no, not in ten years fiege. They have fire-arms, it is true; but they are aukward, clumfy, and uncertain in going off: they have powder, but it is of no ftrength. They have neither difcipline in the field, exercife to their arms, fkill to attack, or temper to retreat; and therefore, I muit confefs, it feemed frange to me when I came home and heard our people fay fuch fine things of the power, riches, glory, magnificence, and trade of the Chinefe, becaufe I faw and knew that they were a contemptible herd or croud of ignorant fordid flaves, fubjected to a government qualified only to rule fuch a people; and, in a word, (for I am now launched quite befide my defign) I fay, in a word, were not it's diffance inconceivably great from Mufcovy, and were not the Mufcovite empire almoft as rude, impotent, and ill-governed a croud of flaves as they, the Czar of Mufcovy might, with much eafe, drive them all out of their country, and conquer them in
one campaign; and had the czar, who I fince hear is a growing prince, and begins to appear formidable in the world, fallen this way inftead of attacking the warlike Swedes, in which attempt none of the powers of Europe would have envied or interrupted him, he might by this time have been Emperor of China, initead of being beaten by the King of Sweden at Narva, when the latter was not one to fix in number. As their ftrength and their grandeurs fo their navigation, commerce, and hufbandry, is imperfect and impotent, compared to the fame things in Europe. Alfo in their knowledge, their learning, their fkill in the fciences, they have globes and fpheres, and a fmatch of the knowledge of mathematicks; but when you come to enquire into their knowledge, how flort-fighted are the wifett of their ftudents ! they know nothing of the motion of the heavenly bodies; and fo grofsly, abfurdly ignorant, that when the fun is eclipfed, they think it is a great dragon has affaulted and run away with it, and they fall a clattering with afl the drums and kettles in the country, to fright the monfter away, juft as we do to hive a fwarm of bees.

As this is the only excufion of this' kind which I have made in all the account I have given of my travels, fo I fhall make no more defcriptions of countries and people; it is rone of my bufinefs, or any part of my defign ; but giving an account of my own adventures through a life of inimitable wanderings, and a long variety of changes, which, perhaps, few have heard the like of, I thall fay nothing of the mighty places, defart countries; and numerous people I have yet to pafs through, more than relates to my own ftory, and which my concern among them will make neceffary. I was now as near as I can compute in the heart of China, about the latitude of 30 degrees north of the line, for we were returned from Nanquin. I had indeed a mind to fee the city of Pekin, which I had heard fo much of, and Father Simon importuned me daily to do it. At length his time of going away being fet, and the other miffionary, who was to go with him, being arrived from Macao, it was neceffary that we flould refolve either to go or not to go ; fo I referred him to my partner $_{z}$
partner, and left it wholly to his choice; who at length refolved for our journey. tive, and we prepared for our journe. We fet out with very good advantage as to finding the way; for we got leave to rravel in the retinue of one of their mandarins, a kind of viceroy or principal magiftrate in the province where they refide, and who take great fate upon ${ }^{2}$ them, travelling with great attendance, and with great homage from the people, who are fometimes greatly impoverifhed by them, becaufe all the countries they pafs through are obliged to furnith provifions for them and all their attendants. That which I particularly obferved, as to our travelling with his baggage, was this; that thoug we received fufficient provifions both for ourfelves and our horfes from the country, as belonging to the mandarin, yet we were obliged to pay for every thing we had after the market price of the country; and the manda pin's feward, or commiffiry of the provifions, collected it duly from us: fo that our travelling in the retinue of the mandarin, though it was a very great kindnefs to us, was not fuch a mighty favour in him, but was indeed a great advantage to him , confidering there were about thirty other people travelled in the fame manner befides us, under the protection of his retinue, or, as we may call it, under his convoy. This, 1 lay, was a great advantage to him, for the country furnifhed all the provitions for nothing, and he took all our money for them.
We were five and twenty days tra-
velling to Pekin, through a country infinitely populous, but miferably cul tivated; the hubandly, œconon1y, and the way of living, all very miferable, though they boalt fo much of the in duitry of the people; I fay, miferable; and fo it is, if we, who underftand how to live, were to endure it, or to compare it with our own; but not fo to thefe poor wretches, who know no other. The pride of thefe people is infinitely great, and exceeded by nothing but their poverty, which adds to that which I call their mifery, I muft needs think the naked favages of America live murch more happy, becaufe, as they have nothing, fo they defire nothing; whereas thefe are proud and infolent, and in the main are mere beggars and drudges. Their often-
tation is inexpreffible, and is chiefly thewed in their cloaths and buildings, and in their keeping multitudes of fervants or flaves, and, which is to the laft degree ridiculous, their contempt of all the world but themfelves.
I muft confefs, I travelled more pleafantly afterwards in the defarts and valt wilderneffes of Grand Tartary than here ; and yet the roads here are well paved and well kept, and very convepient for travellers. But nothing was more aukward to me, than to fee fuch an haughty, imperious, infolent people, in the midit of the groffeft fimplicity and ignorance; for all their famed ingenuity is no more. My friend, Father Simon, and I, ufed to be very merry upon thefe occafions, to fee the beggarly pride of thofe people. For ex ample : coming by the houfe of a country gentleman, as Father Simon called him, about ten leagues off from the city of Nanquin, we had, firf of all, the honour to ride with the mafter of the houfe about two miles. The flate he rode in was a perfect Don Quixotifm, being a mixture of pomp and poverty. The habit of this grealy don was very proper for a Scaramouch or Mer-ry-Andrew ; being a dirty callico, with all the tawdry trappings of a fool's coat fuch as hangings of taffety, fuch as hangong ileeves, taffery, and cuts and flaties almoft on every fide; it covered a rich taffery velt, as greaiy as a butcher, and which teftified that his honour mult needs be a moft exquifite floven.

His horle was a poor, lean, ftarved hobbling creature, fuch as in England might fell for about thirty or fort fhillings; and he had two flaves followed him on foot, to drive the poor creature along he had a whip a whip in his hand, and he belaboured the beaft as fatt about the head as his flaves did about the tail: and thus he rode by us with about ten or twelve fervants; and we were told he was going from the city to his country feat, about half league before us. We travelled on gently, but this figure of a gentleman rode away before us; and as we ftopped at a village about an hour to refreh us, when we came by the coun-try-feat of this great man, we faw him in a little place before his door eating his repaff: it was a kind of gardem, but he was eafy to be feen; and we were given to underfland, that the were given to morki mor
more we looked at him the better he would be pleafed.
He fat under a tree, fomething like the palmetto-tree, which effectually fladed him over the head and on the fouth-fide ; but under the tree alfo was placed a large umbrella, which made that part look well enough. He fat lolling back in a great elbow-chair, being a heavy corpulent man, and his meat being brought him by two women flaves: he had two more, whofe office, I think, few gentlemen in Europe would accept of their fervice in ; viz. one fed the fquire with a fpoon, and the other held the dift with one hand, and fcraped off what he let fall upon his worflip's beard and taffety veft with the other; while the great fat brute thought it below him to employ his own hands in any of thofe familiar offices, which kings and monarchs would rather do, than be troubled with the clumfy fingers of their fervants.

I took this time to think what pain men's pride puts them to; and how troubleiome a haughty temper, thus ill-managed, mult be to a man of common fenfe: and, leaving the poor wretch to pleafe himfelf with our looking at him, as if we admired his pomp, whereas we really pitied and contemned him, we puslued our journey; only Father Simon had the curiofity to ftay to inform himfelf what dainties the country juffice had to feed on in all his ftate; which he faid he had the honour to tafte of, and which was, I think, a dofe that an Englifh hound would fcarce have eaten, if it had been offered him; viz. a mefs of boiled rice, with a great piece of garlick in it, and a little bag filled with green pepper; another plant which they have there, formething like our ginger, but fmelling like mufk, and tafting like mufiard : all this was put together, and a finiall lump or piece of lean mutton boiled in it; and this was his worThip's repaft, four or five fervants more attending at a diftance. If he fed them meaner than he was fed himfelf, the fpice excepted, they muft fare very coarfely indeed.
As for our mandarin, with whom we travelled, he was refpected like a King; furrounded always with his gentlemen, and attended in all his appearances with fuch pomp, that I faw
little of him but at a diffance; but this I obferved, that there was not a horfe in his retinue but that our carriers pack-horfes in England feem to me to look much better; but they were fo covered with equipage, mantles, trappings, and fuch like trumpery, that you cannot fee whether they are fat or lean. In a word, we could fcarce fee any thing but their feet and tituir heads.
I was now light-hearted, and all my trouble and perplexity that I have given an account of being over, I had no anxious thoughts about me; which made this journey much the pleafanter to me ; nor had I any ill accident atended me, only in the paffing or fording a fimall river my horfe fell, and made me free of the country, as they call it; that is to fay, threw me in. The place was not deep, but it wetted me all over. I mention it, becaufe it fpoiled my pocket-book, wherein I had fet down the names of feveral people and places which I had occafion to remember, and which not taking due care of, the leaves rotted, and the words were never after to be read, to my great lofs, as to the names of fome places which I touched at in this koyage.

At length we arrived at Pekin. I had nobody with me but the youth whom my nephew the captain had given me to attend me as a fervant, and who proved very trufty and diligent; and my partner had nobody with him but one fervant, who was a kinfman. As for the Portugueze pilot, he being defirous to fee the court, we gave him his paffage; that is to fay, bore his charges for his company, and to ufe him as an interpreter, for he underftood the language of the country, and fpoke good French, and a little Englimis and, indeed, this old man was a moft ufeful implement to us every where, for we had not been above a week at Pekin, when he came laughing; 'Ah, Seiznior Inglefe!' faid he, 'I have fomething to tell you will ' make your heart glad.' ${ }^{6}$ My heart - glad l' faid I: 'what can that be ? - Idon't know any thing in this coun-- try can either give me joy or grief to ' any great degree,-' Yes, yes,' faid the old man, in broken Englift, ' make you glad, me forrow;' forry he would have faid. This made me more
more inquifitive. 'Why, faid I,
' will it make you forry ?'- 'Becaufe, 'will it make you forry ? - Becaule,
faid he, 'you have brought me here - twenty-five days journey, and will - leave me to go back alone; and - which way fhall I get to my port - afterwards, without a fip, without - a horfe, without pecune? So he called money; being his broken Latin, of which he had abundance to make us merry with.

In fhort, he told us there was a great caravan of Mufcovy and Rolift merchants in the city, and they were preparing to fet out on their journey by land to Mufcovy, within four or five weeks, and he was fure we would take the opportunity to go with them, and Jeave him behind to go back all alone. I confefs I was furprized with this news; a fecret joy fpread itfelf over my whole foul, which I cannot defcribe, and never felt before or fince; and I had no power for a good while to fpeak a word to the old man; but at laft I turned to him: 'How do you 6 know this ?' faid I: 'are yout fure ' it is true ? - 'Yes,' faid he, 'I met - this morning in the ftreet an old ac-- quaintance of mine, an Armenian, - or one you call a Grecian, who is 6 among them; he came laft from - Aftracan, and was defigning to go - to Tonquin, where I formerly knew - him, but has altered his mind, and - is now refolved to go back with the - saravan to Mofcow, and fo down the - river of Wolga to Aftracan. -- Well, Seignior,' faid I, 'do not be - uneafy about being left to go back - alone; if this be a method for my - return to England, it thall be your - fault if you go back to Macao at - all.' We then went to confulting together what was to be done, and alked my partner what he thought of the pilot's news, and whether it would fuit with his affairs. He told me he would do jult as I would; for he had fettled all his affairs fo well at Bengal, and left his effects in fuch good hands, that as we made a good voyage here, if he could veft it in China filks, wrought and raw, fuch as might be worth the carriage, he would becontent to go to England, and then make his voyage back to Bengal by the company's thips.
Having refolved upon this, wfe agreed,
that if our Portugueze pilot would go with us, we would bear his charges to Mofcow, or to England if he pleafed; nor, indeed, were we to be efteemed over generous in that part neither, if we had not rewarded him farther; for the fervice he had done us was really worth all that, and more: for he had not only been a pilot to us at fea, but he had been alfo like'a broker for us on fhore; and his procuring for us the Japan merchant, was fome hundreds of pounds in our pockets. So we confulted together about it; and, being willing to gratify him, which was, indeed, but doing him juftice, and very willing alfo to have him with us befides, for he was a moft neceflary man on all occafions, we agreed to give him a quantity of coined gold, which, as I compute it, came to about 1751 . ferling, between us, and to bear his charges, both for himfelf and horfe, except only a horfe to carry his goods.
Having fettled this among ourfelves, we called him, to Jet him know what we had reolved. I told him, he had complained of our being like to let him go back alone, and I was now to tell him we were refolved he fhould not go back at all; that as we were relolved to go to Europe with the caravan, we refolved alfo he fhould go with us, and that we called him to know his mind. He fhook his had, and faid it was a long journey, and he had no pecune to carry him thither. We told him, we believed it was fo , and therefore we had refolved to do fomething for him, that fould let him fee how fenfible we were of the fervice he had done us; and alfo how agreeable he was to us: and then I told him what we had refolved to give him here, which he might lay out as we would do our own; and that as for his charges, if he would go with us, we would fet him fafe afhore, (life and cafualties excepted) either in Mufcovy or in England, which he would, at our own charge, except only the carriage of his goods.
He received the propofal like a man tranfported, and told, us, he would go with us over the whole world; and 10, in thort, we all prepared ourfelves for the journey. However, as it was with us, io it was with the other merchants, they had many things to do; and in-

[^0]
## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

ftead of being ready in five weeks, it was four months and fome odd days before all things were got together. It was the beginning of February, our fyle, when we fet out from Pekin. My partner and the old pilot had gone exprefs back to the port where we had firlt put in, to dilpofe of fome goods which we had left there ; and I, with a Chinefe merchant, whom I had fome knowledge of at Nanquin, and who came to Pekin on his own affairs, went to Nanquin, where I bought ninety pieces of fine damafks, with about two hundred pieces of other yery fine filks, of feveral forts, fome mixed with gold, and had all thefe brought to Pekin againft my partner's return: befides this, we bought a very large quantity of raw filk, and fome other goods; our cargo amounting, in thefe goods only, to about three thoufand five hundred pounds fterling, which, together with tea, and fome fine callicoes, and three camel-loads of nutmegs and cloves, loaded in all eighteen camels for our fhare, befides thofe we rode upon; which, with two or three fpare horfes, and two horfes loaded with provifions, made us, in fhort, twenty-fix camels and horfes in our retinue.
The company was very great, and, as near as I can remember, made between three and four hundred horfes and camels, and upward of a hundred and twenty men, very well armed, and provided for all events: for, as the Eaftern caravans are fubject to be attacked by the Arabs, fo are thefe by the Tartars; but they are not altogether fo dangerous as the Arabs, nor to barbarous when they prevail.

The company confifted of people of feveral nations, fuch as Mufcovites chiefly; for there were above fixty of them who were merchants or inhabitants of Mofcow, though of them fome were Livonians, and to our particular fatisfaction five of them were Scots, who appeared alfo to be men of great experience in bufinefs, and very good fubftance.
When we had travelled one day's journey, the guides, who were five in number, called all the gentiemen and merchants; that is to fay, all the paffengers, except the fervants, to a great council, as they termed it. At this great council every one depofited
a certain quantity of money to a common fock, for the neceffary expence of buying forage on the way, where it was not otherwife to be had, and for fatisfying the guides, getting horfes, and the like. And here they conflituted the journey, as they called it; viz. they named captains and officers to draw us all up, and give the command in cafe of an attack, and gave every one their turn of command. Nor was this forming us into order any more than what we found needful upon the way, as fhall be obferved in it's place.
The road all on this fide of the country is very populous, and is full of potters, and earth-makers; that is to fay, people that tempered the earth for the China ware; and, as I was going along, our Portugueze pilot, who had always fomething or other to fay to make us merry, came fneering to me, and told me, he would thew me the greateft rarity in all the country; and that I fhould have this to fay of China, after all the ill-humoured things I had faid of it, that I bad feen one thing which was not to be feen in all the world befide. I was very importunate to know what it was. At laft he told me it was a gentleman's houfe built all with China ware. "Well,' built all with China ware. f , ${ }^{6}$ are not the materials of their - building the product of their own - country; and fo it is all China ware, ' is it not?'- No, no,' fays he, ' I - mean, it is a houfe all made of China \& ware, fuch as you call fo in Eng-- land ; or, as it is called in our coun'try, porcelain.' - Well,' faid I, ? fuch a thing may be. How big is - it? Can we carry it in a box upon a ' camel? If we can, we will buy it.' - 'Upon a camel!' faid the old pilot, holding up both his hands, "why - there is a family of thirty people lives - in it."

I was then curious, indeed, to fee it; and when I came to it, it was nothing but this: it was a timber houle, or a houre built, as we call it in EngJand, with lath and plaifter, but all the plaiftering was really China ware, that is to fay, it was plaiftered with the earth that makes China ware.

The outfide, which the fun fhone hot upon, was glazed, and looked very well, perfectly white, and painted with blue figures, as the large China
ware in England is painted, and hard, as if it had been burnt. As to the infide, all the walls, inftead of wainfcot, were lined up with hardened and painted tiles, like the little fquare tiles we call gally-tiles in England, all made of the fineft China, and the figures exceeding fine indeed, with extraordinary variety of colours, mixed with gold, many tiles making but one figure, but joined fo artificially with mortar, being made of the fame earth, that it was very hard to fee where the tiles met. The floors of the rooms were of the fame compofition, and as hard as the earthen floors we bave in ufe in feveral parts of England, efpecially Lincolnfhire, Nottinghamfhire, Leicefterhire, \&cc. as hard as ftone, and finooth, but not burnt and painted, except fome fmaller rooms like clolets, which were all as it were paved with the fame tile; the ceilings, and, in a word, all the plaiftering-work in the whole houfe, were of the fame earth; and, after all, the roof was covered with tiles of the fame, but of a deep fhining black.
This was a China warehoufe, indeed, truly and literally to be called fo; and, had I not been upon the journey, I could have faid fome days to fee and examine the particulars of it. They told me there were fountains and fifh-ponds in the garden, all paved at the bottom and fides with the fame, and fine ftatutes fet up in rows on the walks, entirely formed of the porcelain earth, and burnt whole.

As this is one of the fingularities of China, fo they may be allowed to excel in it; but I am very fure they excel in their accounts of it; for they told me fuch incredible things of their performance in crockery-ware, for fuch it is, that I care not to relate, as knowing they could not be true. One told me, in particular, of a workman that made a hip, with all it's tackle, and mafts, and fails, in earthen-ware, big enough to carry fifty men. If he had told me he launched it, and made a voyage to Japan in it, I might have faid fomething to it indeed; but as it was, I knew the whole flory, which was, in flort, afking pardon for the word, that the fellow lyed; fo I fmiled, and faid nothing to it.

This odd fight kept me two hours behind the caravan, for which the leader of it for the day fined me about
the value of three fhillings; and told me, if it had been three days journey without the wall, as it was three days within, he mult have fined me four times as much, and made me afk pardon the next council-day; fo I promifed to be more orderly; for, indeed, I found afterwards, the orders made for keeping all together were abfolutely neceffary for our common fafety.

In two days more we paffed the great China wall, made for a fortification againft the Tartars; and a very great work it is, going over hills and mountains in an endlefs track, where the rocks are impaffable, and the precipices fuch as no enemy could poffibly enter, or indeed climb up, or where, if they did, no wall could hinder them. They tell us, it's length is near a thoufand Englifh miles, but that the country is five hundred in a ftright meafured line, which the wall bounds, without meafuring the windings and turnings it takes; it is about four fathom high, and as many thick in fome places.

I food ftill an hour or thereabouts, without trefpaffing on our orders, for fo long the caravan was in paffing the gate; I fay, I food fill an hour to look at it on every fide, near and far off; I mean, what was within my view; and the guide of our caravan, who had been extolling it for the wonder of the world, was mighty eager to hear my opinion of it. I told him it was a moft excellent thing to keep off the Tartars; which he happened not to underftand as I meant it, and fo took it for a compliment ; but the old pilot laughed. ' O Seignior Inclefe' frid he, 'you freak Seignior Inglefe, faid he, you peak in colours.-' In colours! fard I; what do you mean by that? Why, - you fpeak what looks white this way, 6 and black that way; gay one way, and dull another way: you tell him it is a good wall to keep out Tar-- tars; you tell me by that, it is good - for nothing but to keep out Tartars ; or, it will keep out none but Tartars. I underftand you, Seignior Inglefe, I ' underftand you!' faid he, joking; but Seignior Chinefe underftand you

## his own way.

Well,' faid I, 'Seignior, do you - think it would fand out an army of - our country people, with a good train ' of artillery; or our engineers, with - two companies of miners? Would

- they not batter it down in ten days,
- that an army might enter in battalia,
- or blow it up into the air, foundation
- and all, that there fhould be no fign
s of it left?' 'Ay, ay,' faid he, 'Iknow
- that.' The Chinefe wanted mightily to know what I faid, and I gave hinn leave to tell him a few days after, for we were then almoft out of their country, and he was to leave us in a little time afterwards; but when he knew what I had faid, he was dumb all the what I had way, and we heard no more reft of the way, $f$ we Chinefe more of his fine Itory of the Chinefe power and greatnefs while he ftaid.

After we had paffed this mighty nothing, called a wall, fomething like the Piecs wall, fo famous in Northumberland, and built by the Romans, we began to find the country thinly inhabited, and the people rather confined to live in fortified towns and cities, as being fubject to the inroads and depredations of the Tartars, who rob in great rmies, and therefore are not to be refifted by the naked inhabitants of an open country.
And here I began to find the neceffity of keeping together in a caravan as we travelled; for we faw feveral troops of Tartars roving about; but when I came to fee them dittinctly, I wondered more that the Chinefe empire could be conquered by fuch contemptible fellows; for they are a mere herd or croud of
wild fellows, keeping no order, and underftanding no difcipline or manner of fight.
Their horfes are poor, lean, farved creatures, taught nothing, and are fit for nothing; and this we found the firft day we faw them, which was after we entered the wilder part of the country. Our leader for the day gave leave for about fixteen of us to go a hunting, as they call it; and what was this but hunting of gieep! However, it may be called hunting too; for the creatures are the wildeft and fwifteft of foot that ever I faw of their kind; only they will not run a great way, and you are fure of fport when you begin the chace; for they appear generally by thirty or forty in a flock, and, like true theep, always keep together when they fly.
In purfuit of this odd fort of game, t was our hap to meet with about forty Tartars; whether they were hunting mutton as we were, or whether they looked for another kind of pres, I know
not; but as foom as they faw us, one of, hem blew a kind of horn very loud, but with a barbarous found that I had never heard before; and, by the way, never care to hear again. We all fuppofed this was to call their friends about them; and fo it was; for in lefs than half a quarter of an hour, a troop of forty or fifty more appeared at about a mile diftance; but our work was over mile diftance; but o
firft, as it happened,
One of the Scots merchants of Morcow happened to be amongit us; and as foon as heard the horn, he told us, in. fhort, that we had nothing to do, but to charge them immediately, without lofs of time. and, drawing us up in a line of time; and, drawing us up in a line, he afked, if we were refolved. We told him, we were ready to follow him : fo he rode dieetly up to them. They ftood gazing at us like a mere croud, drawn up in no order, nor fhewing the face of any order at all ; but as foon as face of any order at all; but as foon as they faw us advance, they let fly their arrows; which, however, miffed us very happily: it feems they miftook not their aim, but their diftance; for theis arrows all fell a little fhort of us, but with fo true an aim, that had we been about twenty yards nearer, we mult have had feveral men wounded, if not killed.
Immediately we halted; and though it was at a great diftance, we fired, and fent them leaden bullets for wooden arrows, following our fhot full gallop, rows, foll in op, refolving to fall in mong them word in hand, for fo our boid Scot that led us directed. He was, indeed, but a merchant, but he behaved with that vigour and bravery on this occafion, and yet with fuch a coo! courage too, that never faw any man in action fitter for never daw any man in action fitter fos command. As fooll as we came up to them, we fired our piftols in their faces, and then drew; but they fled in the greateft confufion imaginable : the only fland any of them made, was on our right, where three of them food, and, by figns, called the reft to come back, to them, having a kind of fcymitar in their hands, and their bows hanging at their backs. Our brave commander, without aking any body to follow him, galloped up clofe to them, and with his fufil knocked one of them off his horfe, killed the fecond with his piftol, and the third ran away; and thus ended our fight: but we had this misfortune attending it, viz, that all our mutton
that we had in chace got away. We had not a man killed or hurt; but, as for the Tartars, there were about five of them killed: how many were wounded, we knew not; but this we knew, that the other party was fo frighted with the noife of our guns, that they fled, and never made any attempt upon us.

We were all this while in the Chinefe dominions, and therefore the Tartars were not fo bold as afterwards; but in about five days we entered a valt great wild defart, which held us three days and nights march ; and we were obliged to carry our water with us in great leather bottles, and to encamp all night, juft as I have heard they do in the defarts of Arabia.

I afked our guides, whofe dominion this was in ; and they told me, this was a kind of border, that might be ealled No Man's Land, being part of the Great Karakathay, or Grand Tartary; but that however, it was reckoned to China: that there was no care taken here, to preferve it from the inroads of thieves; and therefore it was reckoned the worft defart in the whole march, though we were to go over fome much larger.
In paffing this wildernefs, which, I confefs, was at the firf view very frightful to me, we faw two or three times little parties of the Tartars, but they feemed to be upon their own affairs, and to have no defign upon ưs; and fo, like the man who met the devil, if they had nothing to fay to us, we had nothing to ray to them; we let them go.

Once, however, a party of them came fo near, as to fland and gaze at us; whether it was to confider what they should do, viz. to attack us, or not attack us, we knew not; but when we were pafted at fome diftance by them, we made a rear-guard of forty men, and ftood ready for them, letting the caravan pafs half a mile, or thereabouts, before us. After a while they marched off, only we found they affaulted us with five arrows at their parting; one of which wounded a horle, fo that it difabled himn; and we left him the next day, poor creature, in great need of a good farrier. We fuppofe they might thoot more arrows, which might fall fhort of us; but we faw no more arrows or Tartars at that time.
We travelled near a month after this, the ways being not fo good as at firfts
though ftill in the dominions of the emperor of China, but lay, for the moft part, in villages, fome of which were fortified becaufe of the incurfions of the Tartars. When we came to one of thefe towns (it was about two days and a half's journey before we were to come to the city of Naum) I wanted to buy a camel, of which there are pleaty to be fold all the way upon that road, and of horfes alio, fuch as they are, becaufe fo many caravans coming that way, they are very often wanted. The perfon that I fpoke to to get me a camel, would have gone and fetched it for me; but I, like a fool, muft be officious, and go myfelf along with him. The place was about two miles out of the village, where it feems they kept the camels and horfes feeding under a guard.
I walked it on foot, with my old pilot in company, and a Chinefe, being defirous, forfooth, of a little variety. When we came to this place, it was a low marfhy ground, walled round with a ftone wall, piled up dry, without mortar or earth among it, like a park, with a little guard of Chinefe foldiers at the doors. Having bought a camel, and agreed for the price, I came away; and the Chinefe man that went with me led the camel, when on a fudden came up five Tartars on horfeback; two of them feized the fellow, and took the camel from him, while the other three itepped up to me and my old pilot, feeing us, as it were, unarmed, for I had no weapon about me but my fword, which could but ill defend me againft three horfemen. The firft that came up, fopped fhort upon my drawing my fword, (for they are arrant cowards; ) but a fecond coming up upon my leff, gave me a blow on the head, which I never felt till afterward, and wondered, when I came to myfelf, what was the matter with me, and where I was, for he laid me flat on the ground; but my never-failing old pilot, the Portuguezo, (fo Providence unlooked-for direets deliverances from dangers, which to us are unforefeen) had a piftol in his pocket which I knew nothing of, nor the Tartars neither; if they had, I fuppofe they would not have attacked us. But cowards are always boldeft when there is no danger.

The old man feeing me down, with a bold heart ftepped up to the fellow that had ftruck me, and laying hold of

## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

his arm with one hand, and pulling him down by main force a little towards him with the other, he fhot him into the head, and laid him dead on the fpot; he then immediately ftepped up to him who had ftopped us, as I faid, and before he could come forward again (for it was all done as it were in a moment) made a blow at him with a fcymitar, which he always wore; but, miffing the man, cut his horfe into the fide of his head, cut one of his ears off by the root, and a great flice down the fide of his face. The poor beaft, enraged with the wounds, was no more to be governed by his rider, though the fellow fat well enough too; but away he flew, and carried him quite out of the pilot's reach, and at fome diftance rifmg upon his hind legs, threw down the Tartar and fell upon him.
In this interval the poor Chinefe came in, who had loft the camel, but he had no weapon; however, feeing the Tartar down, and his horfe fallen upon him, he runs to him, and, feizing upon an ugly ill-favoured weapon he had by his fide, fomething like a poleax, but not a pole-ax neither, he wrenched it from him, and made fhift to knock his Tartarian brains out with it But my old man had the third Tartar to deal with ftill; and, feeing he did not fly as he expected, nor come on to fight him as he apprehended, but ftood ftock-ftill, the old man food fill too, and falls to work with his tackle to charge his piftol again; but as foon as the Tartar faw the piftol, whether he fuppofed it to be the fame, or another, $\mathbf{I}$ know not, but away he fcoured, and left my pilot, my champion I called him after wards, a compleat victory.
By this time. I was a little awake; for I thought, when I firft began to awake, that I had been in a fweet fleep; but as I faid above, I wondered where I was, how I came upon the ground, and what was the matter; in a word, a few minutes after, as fenfe returned, I felt pain, though I did not know where; I clapped my hand to my head, and took it away bloody; then I felt my head-ach; and then, in another moment, memory returned, and every thing was prefent to me again.
I jumped up upon my feet inftantly, and got hold of my fword, but no enemies in view, I found a Tartar lie dead, and his horfe ftanding very quiet-
ly by him; and, looking farther, I faw my champion and deliverer, who had been to fee what the Chinefe had done, coming back with his hanger in his The old man, feeing me on my feet, came running to me, and embraced me with a great deal of joy, being afraid before that I had been killed; and feeing me bloody, would fee how I was hurt; but it was not much, only what we call a broke ither did I fterwards find any head; neither did I afterwards find any great inconvenience from the blow, other than the place which was hurt, and which was well again in two or three days.

We made no great gain, however; by this victory, for we loft a camel and gained a horfe; but that which was remarkable, when we came back to the village, the man demanded to be paid for the camel. I difputed it, and it was brought to a hearing before the Chinefe judge of the place; that is to fay, in Englifh, we went before a juftice of the peace. Give him his due, he acted with a great deal of prudence and impartiality; and, having heard both fides, he gravely afked the Chinefe man tint went with me to buy the ca'I am no mel, whofe fervant he was. 1 am no ' fervant,' faid he; ' but went with ' the ftranger:' - At whofe requeft?' faid the juftice. 'At the etranger's re' queft,' faid he. 'Why then,' faid the juftice 's you were the ftranger's the juftice, you were the the camel - fervant for the time; and the camel - being delivered to his fervant, it was - delivered to him, and he muft pay - for it.'

I confefs the thing was fo clear, that had not a word to fay; but admiring to fee fuch juft reafoning upon the confequence, and fo accurate flating the cafe, I paid willingly for the camel, and fent for another : but you may obferve, I fent for it; I did not go to fetch it myfelf any more, I had enough of that.

The city of Naum is a frontier of the Chinefe empire; they call it fortified, and fo it is, as fortifications go there; for this I will venture to affirm, that all the Tartars in Karakathay, which, I believe are fome millions, could 1 could not batter down the walls with their bows and arrows; but to call it frong, if it were attacked with cannon, would be to make thole who underitand. it laugh at you.

We wanted, as I have faid, above two days journey of this city, when meffengers were fent exprefs to every part of the road, to tell all travellers and caravans to halt till they had a guard fent to them; for that an unufual body of Tartars, making ten thoufand in all, had appeared in the way, about thirty miles beyond the city.
This was very bad news to travelLers; however, it was carefully done of the governor, and we were very glad to hear we fhould have a guard. Accordingly, two days after, we had two hundred foldiers fent us from a garrifon of the Chinefe on our left, and three hundred more from the city of Naum, and with thofe we advanced boldly; the three hundred foldiers from Naum marched in our front, the two hundred in our rear, and our men on each fide of our camels with our baggage, and the whole caravan in the centre. In this order, and well prepared for battle, we thought ourfelves a match for the whole ten thoufand Mogul Tartar's, if they had appeared; but the next day, when they did appear, it was quite another thing
It was early in the morning, when marching from a little well-fituated town, called Changu, we had a river to pafs, where we were obliged to ferry; and had the Tartars had an intelligence, then had been the time to have attacked us, when, the caravan being over, the rear guard was behind; but they did not appear there.
About three hours after, when we were entered upon a defart of about fifteen or fixteen miles over, behold, by a cloud of duft they raifed, we faw an enemy was at hand; and they were at hand indeed, for they came on upon the fpur.

The Chinefe, our guard on the front, who had talked fo big the day before, began to ftagger, and the foldiers frequently looked behind them; which is a certain fign in a foldier that he is juft ready to ran away. My old pilot was of my mind; and being near me, he called out. 'Seignior Inglefe,' faid he, - thofe fellows muit be encouraged, or Ethey will ruin us all; for if the Tar-- tars come on, they will never ftand - it.'- I am of your mind,' faid I: 6 but what courfe muft be done?' -- Done,' faid he, 'let fifty of our men 6 advance, and flank them on each wing,
and encourage them, and they will fight like brave fellows in brave company; but without it they will every man turn his back." Immediately I rode up to our leader, and told him, who was exactly of our mind; and accordingly fifty of us marched to the right wing, and fifty to the Jeft, and the reft made a line of referye; for fo we marched, leaving the laft two hundred men to make another body by themfelves, and to guard the camels; only that, if need were, they fhould fend an hundred men to affit the laft fifty.
In a word, the Tartars came on, and an innumerable company they were; how many, we could not tell, but ten thoufand we thought was the leaft. A party of them came on firt, and viewed our pofture, traverling the ground in the front of our line; and as as we found them within gun fhot, our leader ordered the two wings to advance fwiftly, and give them a falvo on each wing with their thot, which was done; but they went off, and I fuppofe went back to give an account of the reception they were like to meet with; and, indeed, that falute clogged their fomachs; for they immediately halted, Atood a while to to confider of it, and, wheeling off to the left, they gave over the defign, and faid no more to us for that time, which was very agreeable to our circumitances, which were but very indifferent for a battle with fuch a number.
Two days after this we came to the city of Naum, or Nauum. We thanked the governor for his care of us, and collected to the value of one hundred crowns, or thereabouts, which we gave to the foldiers fent to guard us; and here we refted one day. This is a garrifon indeed, and there were nine hundred foldiers kept here; but the reaion of it was, that formerly the Mufcovite frontiers lay nearer to them than they do now, the Mufcovites having abandoned that part of the country (which lies from the city weft for about two hundred miles) as defolate and unfit for ufe; and more efpecially, being fo very remote, and fo difficult to fend troops hither for it's defence ; for we had yet above two thoufand miles to Mufcony, properly fo called.

After this we paffed feveral great rivers, and two dreadful defarts, one of which we were fixteen days paffing

Min
over, and which, as I faid, was to be called, No Man's Land; and, on the $I_{3}$ th of April, we came to the frontiers of the Mufcovite dominions. I think the firft city, or town, or fortrefs, whatever it might be called, that belonged to the Czar of Mufcovy, was called Argun, being on the weft fide of the river Argun.

I could not but difcover an infinite fatisfaction, that I was now arrived in, as I called it, a Chriftian country; or, at leaft, in a country governed by Chriftians; for though the Mufcovites do, in my opinion, but juft deferve the name of Chriftians, yet fuch they pretend to be, and are very devout in their way. It would certainly occur to any man who travels the world as I have done, and who had any power of reflection; I fay, it would occur to him to refled, what a bleffing it is to be brought into the world where the name of God and of a Redeemer is known, worfhipped and adored, and not where the people, given up by Heaven to ftrong delufions, worfhip the devil, and proftrate themfelves to ftpeks and fones; worfhip monfters, elephants, horrible fhaped animals, and ftatues or images of moniters. Not a town or city we paffed through but had their pagods, theiridols, and their temples, and ignorant people worfhiptemples, and ignorant people wormip-
ping even the works of their own ping e
Now we came where, at leaft, a face of the Chriftian worfhip appeared, where the knee was bowed to Jefus: and whether ignorantly or not, yet the Chriftian religion was owned, and the name of the true God was called upon and adored; and it made the very receffes of my foul rejoice to fee it. I faluted the brave Scotch merchant I mentioned above, with my firft acknowlegment of this ; and, taking him by the hand, I faid to him, Bleffied be Gud, we - are once again come among Chri-- ftians! He finiled, and anfwered, - Do not rejoice too foon, countryman; - thefe Mufcovites are but an odd fort - of Chriftians; and but for the name - of it, you may fee very little of the - fubftance for fome months farther of ' our journey.'

- Well,' faid I, ' but ftill it is better - than Paganifm, and worfhipping of b devils.'- Why, I'll tell you,' laid he; ' except the Ruffian foldiers in
- garrifons, and a few of the inhabi-
- tants of the cities upon the road, all - the reft of this country, for above a - thoufand miles farther, is inhabited - by the worft and moft ignorant of Pagans.' And fo indeed we found it We were now launched into the greateft piece of folid earth, if I underftand any thing of the furface of the globe, that is to be found in any part of the world. We had at lealt twelve hundred miles to the fea, eaftward; we had at leaft two thoufand to the bottom of the Baltick Sea, weftward; and almoft three thoufand miles, if we left that fea, and went on weft to the Britifh and French Channels; we had full five thoufand miles to the Indian or Perfian Sea, fouth; and about eight hundred miles to the Frozen Sea, north: nay, if fome people may be believed, there might be no fea north-eaft till we came round the pole, and confequently into the north-weft, and fo had a continent of land into America, no mortal knows where; though I could give fome reafons why I believe that to be a miftake too.
As we entered into the Mufcovite dominions, a gaod while before we came to any confiderable town, we had nothing to obferve there but this; firf, that all the rivers run to the eaft. As I underitood by the charts which fome of our caravans had with them, it was plain, that all thofe rivers ran into the great river Yamour, or Gammour. This river, by the natural courfe of it, muft run into the Eaft Sea, or Chinefe ocean. The fory they tell us, that the mouth of this river is choaked up with bulrufhes of a monftrous growth, viz. three feet about, and twenty or thirty feet high, I muft be allowed to fay, I believe nothing of; but as it's navigation is of no ufe, becaufe there is no trade that way, the Tartars, to whom alone it belongs, dealing in nothing but cattle, fo nobody that ever I heard of, has been curious enough either to go down to the mouth of it in boats, or to come up from the mouth of it in fhips; but this is certain, that this river running due eaft, in the latitude of 60 degrees, carries a valt concourfe of rivers along with it, and finds an ocean to empty itfelf in that latitude; fo we are fure of fea there.

Some leagues to the north of this ri-
ver there are feveral confiderable rivers, whofe ftreams run as due north as the Yamour runs eaft; and thefe are all found to join their waters with the great river Tartarus, named fo from the northermoft nations of the Mogul Tartars, who, the Chinefe fay, were the firft Tartars in the world; and who, as our geographers alledge, are the Gog and Magog mentioned in facred Story.

There rivers running all northward, as well as all the other rivers $I$ am yet to fpeak of, make it evident, that the northern ocean bounds the land alfo on that fide; fo that it does not feem rational in the leaft to think, that the land can extend itfelf to join with A. merica on that fide, or that there is not a communication between the northern and the eaftern ocean : but of this I fhall fay no more; it was my obfervation at that time, and therefore I take notice of it in this place. We now advanced from the river Arguna by eafy and moderate journies, and were very vifibly obliged to the care the Czar of Mufcovy has taken, to have cities and towns built in as many places as are poffible to place them, where his foldiers keep garrifon fomething like the ftationary foldiers placed by the Romans in the remoteft countries of their empire, fome of which I had read were particularly placed in Britain for the fecurity of commerce, and for the lodging of travellers: and thus it was. here; for wherever we came, though at thefe towns and ftations, the garrifons and governor were Ruffians, and profeffedly mere pagans, facrificing to idols, and worfhipping the fun, moon, and ftars, or all the hoft of heaven ; and not only fo, but were of all the heathens and pagans that ever I met with, the moft barbarous, except only that they did not eat man's flefh, as our lavages of America did.

Some inftances of this we met with in the country between Arguna, where we enter the Mufcovite dominions, and a city of Tartars and Ruffians together, called Nertzinfkay ; in which fpace is a continued defart or foreft, which coft us twenty days to travel over it. In a village near the laft of thofe places I had the curiofity to go and fee their way of living, which is moft brutifh and unfufferable. They had, I fuppofe, a great facrifice that day; for there ftood out
upon an old ftump of a tree, an idol made of wood, frightful as the devil; at leaft as any thing we can think of to reprefent the devil can be made. It had a head certainly not fo much as refembling any creature that the world ever faw; ears as big as goats horns, and as high ; eyes as big as a crown piece; a nofe like a crooked ram's horn, and a mouth extended four-cornered, like that of a lion, with horrible teeth, ike that of a hooked like a parrot's under bill. It was dreffed up in the filthieft manner that you can fuppofe; it's upper garment was of fheep-fkins, with the wool outward a great Tartar bonnet on the head, with two horns growing through it. It was about eight feet high, yet, had no feet or legs, or any other proportion of parts.
This fcarecrow was fet up at the outfide of the village, and when I came near to it, there were fixteen or feventeen creatures, whether men or women I could not tell, for they make no diftinction by their habits either of body or head; thefe lay all flat on the ground, round this formidable block of fhapelefs wood. I faw no motion among them, any more than if they had been logs of wood like their idol: at firt 1 really thought they had been fo; but when I came a little nearer, they ftarted up upon their feet, and raifed an howling cry, as if it had been fo many deep-mouthed hounds, and walked away as if they were difpleafed at our difturbing them. A little way off from this monfter, and at the door of a tent or hut, made all of fheep-fkins and cowikins dried, food three butchers: I thought they were fuch; for when I came nearer to them, I found they had long knives in their hands, and in the middle of the tent appeared three fheep killed, and one young bullock or fteer. Thefe, it feems, were facrifices to that fenfelefs log of an idol; and thefe three men priefts belonging to it, and the feventeen proftrated wretches were the people who brought the offering, and people wing their prayers to that fock.
I confefs I was more moved at their fupidity, and this brutifh worfhip of an hobgoblin, than ever I was at any thing in my life; to fee God's mott glorious and beft creature, to whom he had granted fo many advantages, even by creation, above the reft of the works of his hands, vefted with a reafonable foul $\mathrm{Mm}_{2}$

## 276

ROBINSON CBUSOE.
and that foul adorned with faculties and capacities adapted both to honour his Maker, and be honoured by him; I fay, to fee it funk and degenerated to a degree fo more than flupid, as to proffrate itfèlf to a frightul nothing, a mere imaginary object, dreffed up by themfelves, and made terrible to themfelves by their own contrivance, adorned only with clouts and rags; and thatthis fhould be the effect of mere ignorance, wrought up into hellifh devotion by the devil himfelf, who, envying his Maker the homage and adoration of his creatures, had deluded them into fuch grofs, furfeiting, fordid, and brutifh things, as one would think fhould fhock nature itfelf.
But what fignified all the aftonifhment and reflection of thoughts! Thus it was, and I faw it before my eyes; and there was no room to wonder at it, or think it impoffible; all my admiration turned to rage, and I rode up to the image or monfter, call it what you . will, and with my fword cut the bonnet that was on it's head in two, in the middle, fo that it hung down by one of the horns ; and one of our men that was with me took hold of the fheep-Kkin that covered it, and pulled at it; when, behold, a moft hideous cutcry and howIing ran through the village, and two or three hundref people came about my ears, fo that I was glid to foum for it; for we faw fome fad bows and arrows; but I refolved from that moment to vilit them again.
Our caravan refted three nights at the town, which was about four miles off, in order to provide fome horfes, which they wanted, feveral of the horfes having been lamed and jaded with the badnel's of the way, and our long march over the laft defart; fo we had fome leifure here to put my defign in execution. I communicated my project to the Scots merchant of Mofcov, of whofe courage I had had fifficient teftimony, as above, I told him what I had feen, and with what indignation I had fince thought, that human nature could be fa degenerate. I told him, I was refolved, if I could get but four or five men well armed, to go with me, to go and deftroy that vile, abominable idol; to let them fee, that it had no power to help. itfelf, and confequently could not be an object of worlhip, or to be prayed to
much lefs help them that offered facrifices to it.

He laughed at me. Said he, ${ }^{\text {E Your }}$ - zeal may be good; but what do you © propofe to yourfelf by it ?' - 'Pro'pofe' faid I, 'to vindicate the hof nour of God, which is infulted by 6 this devil-worfhip.' -' But how will 4 it vindicate the honour of God,' faid he, ' while the people will not be able - to know what you mean by it, unlefs - you could fpeak to them too, and telF c them fo ; and then they will fight you - too, I will affure you; for they are - defperate fellows, and that efpeciaily c in defence of their idolatry:- Can - we not,' faid $\mathrm{I},{ }^{6}$ do it in the night, 6 and then leave them the reafons in writing, in their own language ?' writing, in their own language ?
Writing!' faid he, 'why there is not, - in five nations of them, one man that - knows any thing of a letter, or how - to read a word in any language, or 6 in their own.' - Wretched igno'rance!' faid I to him; 'however, I - have a great mind to do it ; perhaps 6 nature may draw inferences from it - to them, to let them fee how brutifh 6 they are, to worfhip fuch horrid '- things.' - Look you, Sir,' faid he, - if your zeal prompts you to it fo - warmly, you muft do it ; but, in the ' next place, I would have you con-- fider, thefe wild nations of people are - fubjected, by force, to the Czar of - Mufcovy's dominions ; and if you do 6 this, it is ten to one but they will come - by thoufands to the governor of Nertbynkay, and complain, and demand - fatisfaction; and if he cannot give - them fatisfaction, it is ten to one but they revolt; and it will occafion a ' new war with all the Tartars in the 6 country.
This, I confefs, put new thoughts into my head for a while; but I harped upon the fame ftring ftill; and all that day I was uneafy to put my project in execution. Towards the evening the Scots merchant met me by accident in our walk about the town, and defired to fpeak with me. 'I believe," faid he, I have put you off of your - good defign; I have been a little 5 concerned about it fince; for I ab' hor the idol and idolatry as much as 6. you can do.- 'Truly,' faid $\overline{\mathrm{I}}$, 'you f have put it off a little as to the exe6 cution of it, but you have not put it
zall out of my thoughts; and, I be- he would go with meif it coft him his - lieve, I fhall do it fill before I quit life. So we agreed to go, only we - this place, though I were to be de-- livered up to them for fatisfaction. - 'No, no,' faid he, 'God forbid - they thould deliver you up to fuch a - crew of monfters ! they fhall not do - that neither; that would be murder-- ing you indeed. - 'Why,' faid I, - how would they ufe me?' 'Ufe - you!' faid he; 'I will tell you how - they ferved a poor Ruffian, who af-- fronted them in their worlhip jult as - you did, and whom they took pri-- foner; after they had lamed him - with an arrow, that he could not - run away, they took him and Itrip-- ped him ftark naked, and fet him - upon the top of the idol monfter, and - ftood all round him, and fhot as - many arrows into him as would ftick - over his whole body; and then they

- burnt him, and all the arrows fick-- ing in him, as a facrifice to the idol.' -'And was this the fame idol?' faid I. 'Yes,' faid he, 'the very fame.' - Well,' faid I, 'I will tell you a - Itory.'So I related the ltory of our men at Madagafcar, and how they burnt and facked the village there, and killed man, woman, and child, for their murdering one of our men, jult as it is related before: and when I had done, I added, that I thought we ought to do fo to this village.
He liftened very attentively to this ftory; but when I talked of doing fo to that village, faid he, ' You miltake - very much; it was not this village, - it was almoft a hundred miles from - this place; but it was the fame idol, - for they carry him about in procer-- fion all over the country.- - Well, faid I, ' then that idol ought to be ' punifhed for it ; and it hhall,' faid I, 'if I live this night out.'
In a word, finding me refolute, he liked the defign, and told me I hould not go alone, but he would go with me; but he would go firft, and bring a fout fellow, one of his countrymen, to go also with us; 'and one, faid he, ' as famous for his zeal as you - can defire any one to be againft fuch - devilifh things as thefe.' In a word, he brought me his comrade, a Scotiman, whom he called Captain Richardfor; and I gave him a full account of what I had feen, and alfo of what I intended; and he told me readily,
three. I had, indeed, propoled it to my partner ; but he declined it. He faid, he was ready to affift me to the utmoft, and upon all occafions, for my defence; but that this was an adventure quite out of his way. So, I fay, we refolved upon our work, only we three, and my man fervant, and to put it in execution that night about midnight, with all the fecrefy imaginable.

However, upon fecond thoughts, we were willing to delay it till the next night, becauife the caravan being to fet forward in the morning, we fuppofed the governor could not pretend to give thein any fatisfaction upon us when we were out of his power. The Scots merchant, as fteady in his refolution to enterprize it, as bold in executing, brought me a Tartar's robe or gown of fheep-fkins, and a bonnet with a bow and arrows, and had provided the fame for himfelf and his countryman, that the people, if they faw us, fhould not be able to determine who we were.

All the firft night we fpent in mixing up fome combuftible matter with aqua-vitæ, gunpowder, and fuch other materials as we could get; and, having a good quantity of tar in a little pot, about an hour a ter night we fet out upon our expedition.

We came to the place about eleven $o^{\prime}$ clock at night, and found that the people had not the leaft jealoufy of danger attending their idol. The night was cloudy, yet the moon gave us light enough to fee that the idol ftood juft in the tame poiture and place that it did before. The people feemed to be all at their reft; only, that in the great hut or tent, as we called it, where we faw the three priefts, whom we miftook for butchers, we faw a light, and going up clofe to the door, we heard people talking, as if there were five or tix of thein; we concluded therefore, that if we fet wildfire to the idol, thefe men would come out immediately, and run up to the place to relcue it from the deftruction that we intended for it; and what to do with them we knew not. Once we thought of carrying it away, and letting fire to it at a diltance; but when we came to handie it, we found it too bulky for our carriage ;
fo we were at a lofs again. The fecond Scotiman was for fetting fire to the tent or hut, and knocking the creatures that were there on the head when they came out : but I could not join with that; I was againt killing them, if it was poffible to be avoided. -Well then,' faid the Scots merchant, - I will tell you what we will do; we - will try to take them prifoners, tie - their hands, and make them ftand 6 and fee their idol deftroyed.

As it happened, we had twine or packthread enough about us, which we ufed to tie our fire-works together with; fo we refolved to attack thefe people firft, and with as little noife as we could. The firft thing we did, we knocked at the door; when one of the priefts coming to the door, we immediately feized upon him, ftopped his mouth, and tied his hands behind him, and led him to the idol, where we gagged him, that he might not make a noife; tied his feet allo together, and left him on the ground.
Two of us then waited at the door, expecting that another would come out to fee what the matter was; but we waited fo long till the third man came back to us; and then, nobody coming out, we knocked again gently, and immediately out came two more, and we ferved them juft in the fame manner, but were obliged to go all with them, and lay them down by the idol fome diffance from one another; when, going back, we found two more were come out to the donr, and a third food behind them within the door. We feized the two, and immediately tied them, when the third fepping back and crying out, my Scots merchant went in after him, and taking out a compofition we had made, that would only fmoak and fink, he fer fire to it, and threw it in among them; by that time the other Scotfinan and my man taking charge of the two men already bound, and tied together alfo by the arm, led them away to the idol, and left them there, to fee if their idol would relieve them, making hafte back to us.
When the furze we had thrown in hadd flled the hut with fo much fmoak that they were almolt fufficated, we then threw in a fmall leather bag of another kind, which flamed like a sandle, and following it in, we found
here were but four people left, who, it feems were two inen and two women, and as we fuppofed had been about fome of their diabolick facrifices. They appeared, in fhort, fright ed to death, at leaft fo as to fit trembling and Ptupid, and not able to Speak neither for the fmoke.
In a word, we took them, bound them as we had the other, and all without any noife. I fhould have faid, we brought them out of the houfe or hut first for indeed we were not able to bear the finoke any more than they were. When we had done this, we carried them all together to the idol. When we came there, we fell to work with him; and firft we daubed him all over, and his robes alfo, with tar and fuch other ftuff as we had, which was tallow mixed with brimftone; then we fopped his eyes, and ears, and mouth full of gunpowder; then we, wrapped up a great piece of wildfire in his bonnet; and then fticking all the combuftibles we had brought with us upon him, we looked about to fee if we could find any thing elfe to help to burn him; when my Scotfman remembered, that by the tent or hut where the men were, there lay a heap of dry forage, whether ftraw or rufhes I do not remember; away he and the other Scotfinan ran and fetched their arms full of that. When we had done this, we took all our prifoners, and brought them, having untied their feet, and ungagged their mouths, and made them ftand up, and fet them juft before their monftrous idol, and then fet fire to the whole

We fayed by it a quarter of an hour, or thereabouts, till the powder in the eyes, and mouth and ears of the idol blew up, and, as we could perceive, had Split and deformed the fhape of it; and, in a word, till we faw it burn into a mere block or log of wood; and then fetting the dry forage to it, we found it would be foon quite confumed, fo we began to think of going away; but the Scotfman faid, - No, we mult not go ; for thefe poor - deluded wretches will all throw them-- felves into the fire, and burn them-- felves with the idol.' So we refolved to fay till the forage was burnt down too, and then we came away and left them.

In the morning we appeared among
our fellow-travellers, exceeding bufy in getting ready for our journey; nor could any man fuggeft that we had been any where but in our beds, as travellers might be fuppofed to be, to fit themfelves for the fatigues of that day's journey.

But it did not end fo; for the next day came a great multitude of the coun-try-people, not only of this village, but of a hundred more, for aught I know, to the town-gates; and in a moft outrageous manner, demanded fatisfaction of the Ruffian governor, for the infulting their priefts, and burning their fulting their pris, great Cham-Chi-Thaungu;
hard name they gave the monftrous creature they worthipped. The people of Nertzinfkay were at firf in a great confternation; for they faid the Tartars were no lefs than thirty-thoufand, and that in a few days more they would be one hundred thoufand frong.

The Ruffian governor fent out mefSengers to appeale them, and gave them all the good words imaginable. He af fured them he knew nothing of it, and that there had not a foul of his garrifon been abroad; that it could not be from any body there; and if they would let him know who it was, they fhould be exemplarily punifhed. They returned, haughtily, that all the country reverenced the great Cham-Chi-Thaungu, who dwelt in the fun, and no mortal would have dared to offer violence to his image but fome Chriftian mifcreant; fo they called them, it feems; and they therefore denounced war againtt him, and all the Ruffians who they faid were mifcreants and Chriftians

The governor, fill patient, and unwilling to make a breach, or to have any caule of war alledged to be given by him, the czar having ftraightly charged him to treat the conquered country with gentlenefs and civility, gave them ftill all the good words he could; at laft he told them, there was a caravan gone towards Ruffia that morning, and perhaps it was fome of them, who had done them this injury; and that, if they would be fatisfied with that, he would fend after them to enquire into it. This feemed to appeafe them a little; and accordingly the governor fent after us, and gave us a particular account how the thing was ; intimating withal, that if any in our caravan had done it, they mould make their efcape; but that,
whether they had done it or no, we
fhould make all the hatte forward that was poflible; and that, in the mear time, he would keep them in play as long as he could.
This was very friendly in the governor. However, when it came to the caravan, there was nobody knew any thing of the matter; and, as for us that were guilty, we were the leath of all fufpected; none fo much as afked us a queftion: however, the captain of the caravan, for the time, took the hint that the governor gave us, and we marched or travelled two days and two nights without any confiderable top, and then we lay at a village called Plothus; nor did we make any long ftop here, but haftened on towards Jarawena, another of the Czar of Mufcovy's colonies, and where we expected we Thould be fafe. But it is to be obferved, that here we began, for two or three days march, to enter upon a valt namelefs defart, of which 1 fhall fay more in it's place; and which, if we had now been upon it, it is more than probable we had been all deftroyed. It was the fecond day's march from Plothus, that, by the clouds of duft behind us at a great diftance, fome of our people began to be fenfible we were purfued We had entered the defart, and had paifed by a great lake called Schanks Orier, when we perceived a very great body of horfe appear on the other fide of the lake to the north, we travelling weft. We obferved they went away weft, as we did; but had fuppofed we thould have taken that fide of the lake, whereas we very happily took the fouth fide, and in two days more we faw them not, for they, believing we wereftill before them, puifed on, till they came to the river Udda. This is a very great river whem it paffes farther north; but when we came to it, we found it narrow and fordable.
The third day they either found their miftake, or had intelligence of us, and came pouring in upon us towards the dufk of the evening. We had, to our great fatisfaction, juft pitched upon a place for our camp, which was very convenient for the night; for as we were upon a defart, though but at the beginning of it, that was above five hundred miles over, we had no towns to lodge at, and indeed experted none but the city Jarawena, which we had
yet two days march to. The defart, however, had fome few woods in it on this fide, and little rivers, which ran all into the great river Udda. It was in a narrow ftrait between two fmal but very thick woods, that we pitched our little camp for that night, expecting to be attacked in the night.
Nobody knew, but ourfelves, what whal for the Mogul Tartars to an about in troops in that defart, fo the caravans always fortify themfelves every night againft them, as againft armies night againft them, as againf armies new thing to be purfued.
But we had this night, of all the nights of our travels, a molt advantageous camp; for we lay between two woods, with a little rivalet rumning juft before our front; fo that we could not be furrounded or attacked any way, but in our front or rear: we took care alfo to make our front as frong as we could, by placing our packs, with our camels and horfes, all in a line on the infide of the river, and we felled fome trees in our rear.
In this pofture we encamped for the hight; but the enemy was upon us before we had finiffed our fituation: they did not come on us like thieves, as we expected, but fent three meffengers to us, to demand the men to be delivered to them, that had abufed their prieft and burnt their god Cham-Chi-Thaungu, that they might burn them with fire; and, upon this, they faid they would go away, and do us no farther harm, otherwife they would burn us all with fire. Our men looked very blank at this meffage, and began to ftare at one another, to fee who looked with moft guilt in their faces; but nobody was the word, nobody did it. The leader of the caravan fent word, he was well affured it was hot done by any of our camp; that we were peaceable merchants travelling on our bufinefs; that we had done no harm to them, or to any one elfe; and therefore they muft look farther for their enemies who had injured them, for we were not the people: fo defired them not to difturb us; for if they did, we fhould defend ourfelves.
They were far from being fatisfied with this for an anfwer, and a great croud of them çame down in the morning, by break of day, to our
camp; but, feeing us in fuch an ad vantageous fituation, they durlt come no farther than the brook in our front, where they ftood, and fhewed us fuch a number, as, indeed, terrified us very much; for thofe that fpoke leaft of them, fooke of ten thoufand. Here they ftood, and looked at us a while, and then fetting up a great howl, they but we were well enough fortified for that, for we were fheltered under our baggage; and I do not remember that one man of us was hurt.
Some time after this, we faw them move a little to our right, and expected them on the reair, when a cunning fellow, a Coffack, as they call them, of Jarawena, in the pay of the Mufcovites, calling to the leader of the caravan, faid to him, "I will of the ca'thefe people away to Sibeilka.? This was a city four or five days journey, at leaft, to the fouth, and rather behind us. So the takes his bow and arrows ; and, getting on horfeback, he rides away from our rear direally, as it were, back to Nertzinfkay; after this, he takes a great circuit about, and comes to the army of the Tartar's, as if he had been fent exprets to tell them a long ftory, that the people who had burnt their Cham-Chi-Thaungu were gone to Sibeilka with a caravan of mifcreants, as he called them; that is to fay, Chriftians; and that they were refolved to burn the god Scal-Ifar belonging to the Tongufes
As this fellow was a mere Tartar, and perfectly fooke their language, he counterfeited fo well, that they all took it from him, and away they drove in a moft violent hurry to Sibeilka, which it feems was five days journey to the fouth, and in lefs than three hours they were entirely out of our fight, and we never heard any more of them, nor ever knew whether they went to that other place called Sibeilka or not.
Su we paffed fafely on to the city of Jarawena, where there was a garrifon of Mufcovites; and there we refted five days, the caravan being exceedingly fatigued with the laft day's march, and with want of reft in the night.
From this city we had a frightful defart, which held us three and twenty days march, We furnifhed our-
relves with fome tents here, for the better accommodating ourfelves in the night; and the leader of the caravan procured fixteen carriages, or waggons, of the country, for carrying our water and provifions : and thefe carriages were our defence every night Tarour little camp; fo that had been very numerous indeed, they would not have been able to hurt us.

We may well be fuppofed to want reft again after this long journey; for in this defart we faw neither houfe nor tree, nor fcarce a bufh; we faw, indeed, abundance of the fable-hunters, as they called them : theie are all Tartars of the Mogul Tartary, of which this country is a part, and they frequently attack fmall caravans ; but we faw no numbers of them together. I was curious to fee the fable-1kins they catched; but I could never fpeak with any of them; for they durft not come near us, neither durft we itraggle from ou company to go near them.
After we had paffed this defart, we came into a country pretty well inhabited; that is to Cay, we found towns and caltles rettled by the Czar of covy, with garrifons of ftationary fol diers to protect the carava the country againft the Tartars, who would otherwie make it very dange rous travelling; and his cza or the has given fuch ftrict orders for the wis guarding the caravans and merchants that if there are any Tartars heard of in the country, detachments of the garrion are always to vellers fafe from ftation to ftation.
And thus the governor of Adinkkoy, whom I had an opportunity to make a vifit to, by means of the Scotch mer chant who was acquainted wen, if we offered us a guard of fifty men, the thought there was any danger, to the next ftation.
I thought, long before this, that as we came nearer to Europe we fhould find the country better peopled, and the people more civilized, for we had myfelf miltaken yet the nation of the cow the fame tothrough, where we the farity or kens of paganim and as they were worle, than before; conquered by the Murcore not fo dantirely reduced, the but for the rudenefs of man-
ners, idolatry, and polytheifm, no people in the world ever went beyond them. They are cloathed all in fkins of beafts, and their houfes are built of the fame. Youknow not a man from a woman, neither by the ruggednels of their countenances, or their cloaths ; and in the winter, when the ground is covered with fnow, they live under have cavities or caves going from one have cavitis
to another.

If the Tartars had their Cham-ChiThaungu for a whole village or country, thefe had idols in every hut and every cave; befides, they worfhip the ftars, the fun, the water, the fnow; and, in a word, every thing that they do not underftand, and they underitand but very little; fo that almoft every element, every uncommon thing, But I am no more to defcribe peopie than countries, any farther than my own ftory comes I met with nothing peculiar them. I met with nothing pecuia to myfon was from the defart which I fpoke of laft at leaft four hundred miles, half of it being another defart, which took us up twielve days fevere travelling, without houfe, tree, or bufh; but wie were obliged again to carry our own provifions, as well water as bread. After we were out of this defart, and had travellied two days, we came to Tanezay, a Mufcovite city or fation, on the great River Janezay: This river, they told us, parted Europe from Afia, though our map-makers, as I am told, do not agree to it; however, am told, do not agree to it; however, the ancient Siberia, which now makes a province only of the vaft Mufcovite empire, but is itfelf equal in bignefs to the whole empire of Germany.
And yet here I obferved ignorance and paganifm itill prevailed, except in the Mufcovite garrifons. All the country between the River Oby and the River Janezay is as entirely Pa gans, and the people as barbarous, as the remoteft of the Tartars; nay, as any nation, for aught I know, in Afia or America. I alio found, which I obferved to the Mufcovite governors whom I had opportunity to converfe with, that the Pagans are not much the wifer, or the nearer Chriftianity, for being under the Mufcovite goverafor being ender the Mulcovite govern-
ment; which they acknowledged was true enough: but they faid it was none of their bufinefs; that if the czar expeeted to convert his Siberian, or Tonguefe, or Tariar fubjects, it fhould be done by fending clergymen among them, not foldiers; and they added, with more fincerity than I expected, that they foundit was not fo much the concern of their monarch to make the people Chriftians, as it was to make them fubjects.

From this river to the great River Oby, we croffed a wild uncultivated country; I cannot fay it is a barbarous foil, it is only barren of people and good management, otherwife it is in itfelf a moft pleafart, fruitful, and agreeable country. What inhabitants we found in it are all Pagans, except fuch as are fent among them from Ruffia; for this is the country, I mean on both fides the River Oby, whither the Mufcovite criminals that are not put to death are banifhed, and from whence it is next to impoffible they fhould ever come away.

I have nothing material to fay of my particulan affairs, till I came to Tobolfki, the capital of Siberia, where I contimued fome time on the following occafion.
We had been now almoft feven months on our journey, and winter began to come on apace; whereupon my partner and I called a council about our particular affairs, in which we found it proper, confidering that we were bound for England, and not for Mofcow, to confider how to difpofe of ourfelves. They told us of fledges and fein-deer to carry us over the fnow in the winter-time; and, indeed, they have furch things as it would be incredible to relate the particulars of, by which means the Ruffians travel more in the winter than they can in fummer; becaufe in thefe fledges they are able to run night and day: the fnow being frozen, is one univerfal covering to nature, by which the hills, the vales the rivers, the lakes, are all fmooth, and hard as a ftone; and they run upon the furface without any regard to what is underneath.

But I had no occafion to pufh at a winter journey of this kind; I was bound to England, not to Mofcow and my route lay two ways; either I muft go on as the caravan went till I
came to Jariflaw, and then go off weft for Narya and the gulph of Finland, and fo either by fea or land to Dantzick, where I might poffibly fell my China cargo to good advantage ; or I muft leave the caravan at a little town on the Dwina, from whence I had but fix days by water to Archangel, and from thence might be fure of fhipping, either to England, Holland, or Hamburgh.
Now, to go any of thefe journies in the winter would have been prepofterous; for as to Dantzick, the Baltick would be frozen up, and I could not get paffage ; and to go by land in thofe countries was far lefis fafe than amone the Mooul Tartars ; likewife to Archangel in Oefober, all the fhips would angel in october, all the mips would be gone from thence, and even the merchants who dwell there in fummer, retire fouth to Molcow in the winter, when the fhips are gone; fo that I fhould have nothing but extremity of cold to encounter with, with a fcarcity of provifions, and muft lie there in an empty town all the winter. So that upon the whole I thought it much my better way to let the caravan go, and to make provifion to winter where I was ; viz. at Toboliki, in Siberia, in the latitude of 60 degrees, where I was fure of three things to wear out a cold winter with; viz. plenty of provifions, fuch as the country afforded, a warm houfe, with fuel enough, and excellent company; of all which I fhall give a full account in it's place. I was now in a quite different climate from my beloved ifland, where I never felt cold, except when I had my ague ; on the contrary, I had much to do to bear my cloaths on my back, and never made any fire but withont doors, and my neceffity, in dreffing my food, \&cc. Now I made me three good velts, with large robes or gowns over them to hang down to the feet and button clofe to the wrifts, and all thefe lined with furs, to make them fufficiently warm.
As to a warm houfe, I muft confefs I greatly diflike our way in England, of making fires in every room in the houfe in open chimneys, which, when the fire was out, always kept the air in the 100 m cold as the climate. But taking an apartment in a good houle in the town, I ordered a chimney to be built like a furnace in the centre of
fix feveral rooms, like a ftove; the funnel to carry the fmoak went up one way, the door to come at the fire went in another, and all the rooms were kept equally warm, but no fire feen; like as they heat the bagnios in England.

By this means we had always the fame climate in all the rooms, and an equal heat was preferved; and how cold foever it was without, it was always warm within ; and yet we faw no fire, nor were ever incommoded with any fmoke.
The moft wonderful thing of all was, that it fhould be poffible to meet with good company here, in a country fo barbarous as that of the moft northerly parts of Europe, near the Frozen Ocean, and within but a very few degrees of Nova Zembla.

- But this being the country where the tate criminals of Mufcoyy as I obferved before, are all banifked, this city was full of noblemen, princes, gentlemen, colonels, and in mort, al degrees of the nobility, gentry, foldiery, and courtiers of Mulcovy. Here were the famous Prince Galilfken, or Galoffken, and his fon; the old geneal Robitifey, and feveral other perforis of note, and fome ladies.
By means of my Scotch merchant, By means of my scotch mith here,
whom, neverthelefs, I parted wither whom, nevertheless, I parted wite an acquaintance with feveral of I made an acquaintance with everal of the fritt rank; and from thefe, in the long winter nights in which I ftayed here, I received feveral agreeable vifits. It was talking one night with a certain prince, one of the banifhed minifters of fate belonging to the Czar of Mufcovy, that my talk of my particular cale began. He had been telling me abundance of fine things, of the greatnefs, the magnificence, and dogreatners, the magrolute power of the Emperor of the Ruffians. I interrupted him, and told him, I was a greater and more powerful prince than ever the Czar of Mufcovy was, though my dominions were not fo large, or my people fo many. The Ruffian grandee looked a little furprized; and, fixing his eyes fteadily wpon me, began to wonder what I meant.
I told him, his wonder would ceafe when I had explained myfelf. Fuf, I told him, I had the abfolute difpofal of the lives and fortunes of all my
fubjects : that notwithttanding my abfolute power, I had not one perfon difaffected to my government or to my perfon in all my dominions. He fhook his head at that, and faid, there, indeed, I out-did the Czar of Mufcovy. I told him, that all the lands in my foldom, were my own, and all ny kingo were mot only any tenants fubjects were not only my tenants, all fight for me to the laft drop; and all fight for me to the laft drop; and that never tyrant, for fuch I acknow ledged mylelf to be, was ever fo univerfally beloved, and yet fo horribly feared, by his fubjects.
After amufing them with thefe riddles in government for a while, I opened the cafe, and told them the fory at large, of my living in the ifland, and how I managed both myfelf and the people there that were under me, juif as I have fince minuted it down. They were exceedingly taken with the fory, and efpecially the prince, who told me with a figh, that the true greatnefs of life was to be malter of ourfelves; that he would not have exchanged fuch a ttate of life as mine to have been Czar of Mufcovy; and that he found more felicity in the retirement he feemed to be banifhed to there, than ever he found in the higheft authority he enjoyed in the court of his mafter the czar: that the height of human wifdom was to bring our tempers down to our circumitances, and to make a calm within, under the weight of the greateft ftorm without. When he came firft hither, he faid, he ufed to tear the hair fiom his head, and the cloath har his back, as others had done be from his back, a fore him; but a litle time and confl deration had made him look into him felf, as well as round himelf, to things without. That he found the mind of man, if it was but once brought to reflect upon the fate of univerfal life, and how little this world was concerned in it's true felicity, was perfectly capable of making a felicity for itfelf, fully fatisfying to itfelf, and fuitable to it's own beft ends and defires, with but very little affiftance from the world. That air to breathe from the wain life, cloaths for in, food to fuitain life, cloaths for warmth, and liberty for exercife, in order to health, compleated, in his opinion, all that the world could do for us; and though the greatnefs, the authority, the riches, and the pleafures, $\mathrm{Nn}_{2}$
which


## ROBINSON CRUSOE.

which fome enjoyed in the world, and which he had enjoyed his fhare of, had much in them that was agreeable to us, yet he obferved, that all thofe things chiefly gratified the coarfeft of our affections ; fuch as our ambition, our particular pride, our avarice, our our particular pride, vanity, and our fenfuality, (all which were, indeed, the mere product of the worlt part of man) were in themfelves erimes, and had in them the feeds of all manner of crimes; but neither were related to, or concertied with, any of thofe virtues that conitituted us wife men, or of thofe graces which diflinguifhed us as Chriffians. That being now deprived of all the fancied felicity, which he enjayed in the full exercife of all thofe vices, he faid, the was at leifure to fook upon the dark fide of them, where he found all manner of deformity; and was now convinced, that virtue only makes a man truly wiff, rich, and great, and preferves him in the way to a fuperior happinefs in a future flate; and in this, he fiid, they were more happy in their biniflment than all their enemies were, who had the full poffeffion of all the wealth and power that they (the banifhed) had left behind him.
'Nor, Sir,' faid he, 'do I bring my 4 mind to this politically, by the neEcflity of my circumffances, which a fome call miferable; but if I know f any thing of myfelf, I would not go - back, no, not though my malter, the - czar, fhould call me, and offer to * reinitate me in all my former gran* deur; I fay, I would no more ga 4 back to it, than I believe my foul, 4 when it hall be delivered from this - prifon of the body, and has had a * tafte of the glorious ftate beyond life, - would come back to the gaol of flech - and blood it is now inclofed in, and - Ieave Heaven to deal in the dirt and ' grime of human affairs.
He fpake this with fomuch warmth in his temper, fo much earneftnefs and motion of bis fpirits, which were apparent in his counienance, that it was evident it was the true fenie of his foul. And, indeed, there was no room to doubt his fincerity.
I told him, I once thought mylelf a kind of a monarcl in my old ttation, of which I had given him an account, but that I thought he was not a moaarch eniy, but a great corqueror;
for that he that has got a victory ovar his own exorbitant defires, and has the abfolute dominion over himfelf, and whofe reafon entirely governs his will, is certainly greater than he that conquers a city. 'But, my lord,' faid I, ' fhall I take the liberty to afk 'a queftion ?'- 'With all my heart," faid he. 'If the door of your liberty f was opened,' faid I, ' wyould not you f was opened, faid 1, ' would not you
i take hold of it to deliver yourfelf ' from this exile ?'
'Hold l' faid he; 'your queftion is 4 fubtle, and requires fome ferious jult - diftinctions, to give it a fincere an6 fwer ; and I will give it you from 6 the bottom of my heart. Nothing 6 the bottom of my heart. Nothing - move me to deliver my felf from this 6 ftate of baniflament, except thefe two f ift, The enjoyment of my relations ; f and, adly, A little warmer climate. 6 But I proteft to you, that to go back to the pomp of the court, the glory, f the power, the hurry of a minifter - of fate; the wealth, the gaiety, and - the pleafures, that is to fay, follies 6 of a courtier; if my mafter fhould fend me word this moment, that he - reftores me to all he banifhed me - from, I proteft, if I know myfelf 6 at all, I would not leave this wil' at all, I would not leave this wil-
' dernefs, thefe defarts, and thefe fro-- zen lakes, for the palace of Mof-- cow.
' But, my lord,' faid I, 'perhaps - you not only are banifhed from the - pleafures of the court, and from the © power, and authority, and wealth, - you enjoyed before, but you may - be abfent too from fome of the con-- veniences of life; your eftate, per6 haps, confifcated, and your effects plundered; and the fupplies left you f here may not be fuitable to the orf dinary demands of life.
'Aye,' faid he, 'that is as you fup-- pofe me to be a lord, or a prince, \&c. So, indeed, I am; but you are now to confider me only as a man, - a human creature, not at all diffin6 guifhed from another; and fo I can 6 fuffer no want, unlefs I fhould be - vifited with ficknefs and diftempers. - However, to put the queltion out of - difpute; you fee our manner: we - are in this place five perfons of rank 6 we live perfectly retired, as fuited 6 to a ftate of banifhment; we have fomething refcued from the fhip-
(wreck of our fortunes, which keeps ' us from the mere neceffity of hunt, ing for our food; but the poor fol-- diers who are here, without that diers, live in as much plenty as we. - Thelp, live into the woods, and catch - They go into the whe labour of a fables and foxes; month will maintain them a no ex and as the way of living is not expenfive, $f o$ it is not hard to get fuf' 'ficient to ourfelves. Sa that objection is out of doors.?
I have not room to give a full account of the moft agreeable converfation I had with this truly great man; in all whith he fhewed that his mind was fo infpired with a fuperior knowledge of things, fo fupported by relifion, as well as by a valt fhare of wildom, that his contempt of the worlc was really as much as he had expreffed and that he was always the fame to the laft ; as will appear in the ftory I am going to tell.
I had been here eight months, and a dark, dreadful, winter I thought it to be; the cold was fo intenfe, that I could not fo much as look abroad, without being wrapped infurs, and a malk of fur before my face, or rather a hood, with only a hole for breath, and two for fight. The little day light we had was, as we reckoned, for three months, not above five hours a day, and fix at moft; only that the fnow lying on the ground continually, and the weather clear, it was neve quite dark. Our horfes were kept (or rather ftarved) under ground; and, as for our fervants (for we hired fervants bere to look after our horfes and felyes) we had every now and then their fingers and toes to thaw and take care of, leif they fhould mortify and fall off.
It is true, within doors we were warm, the houfes being clofe, the walls thick, the lights fmall, and the glafs all double. Our food was chiefly the fielh of deer, dried and-cured in the feafon; good bread enough, but baked as bifcuits; dried filh of feveral forts, and fome flefh of mutton, and of buffaloes, which is pretty good beef. All the ftores of provilions for the winter are laid up in the fummer, and well cured: our drink was water mixed with aqua ritce inftead of brandy; and, for a treat, mead inftead of wine; which, however, they have excellent good. The hunters, who venture abroad all weathers, fre-
quently brought us in frefh venifon, very fat and good; and fometimes bears flefh, but we did not much care for the laft. We had a good ftock of tea, with which we treated our friends as above; and, in a word, we lived very chearfully and well, all things confidered.
It was now March, and the days grown confiderably longer, and the weather at leaft tolerable ; fo other travellers began to prepare fledges to carry them over the fnow, and to get things ready to be going: but my meafures being fixed, as I faid, for Archangel, and not for Mufcovy or the Baltick, I made no motion, knowing very well, that the flips from the fouth do not fet out for that part of the world till May or June; and that if I was there at the beginning of Auguit, it would be as foon as any fhips would be ready to go away; and therefore, I fay, I made no hafte to be gone, as others did: in a word, I faw a great many people; nay, all the travellers, go away before me. It feems, every year they go from thence to Mofcow for trade; viz. to carry furs, and buy neceffaries with them, which they bring back to furnifh their fhops: alfo others went on the fame errand to Archangel; but then they alfo, being to come back again above eight hundred miles, went all out before me.

In fhoft, about the latter end of May, I began to make all ready to pack up; and as I was doing this, it occurred to me, that feeing all thefe people were banifhed by the Czar of Mufcovy to Siberia, and yet, when they came there, were at liberty to go whither they would; why did they not then go away to any part of the world wherever they thought fit. And I began to examine what fhould hinder them from making fuch an attempt.

But my wonder was over, when I entered upon that fubject with the perfon I have mentioned, who anfwered me thus: 'Confider, firft, Sir,' faid he, ' the place where we are; and, fe-- condly, the condition we are in; efpecially the generality of the people who are banifhed hither. We are furrounded,' faid he, ' with ftronger 6 things than bars and holts; on the north fide is an unnavigable ocean, where fhip never failed, and boat \& never fwam ; neither, if we had both,

- could we know whither to go with - them. Every other way;' faid he, 'we
- have above a thoufand miles to pafs
- through the czar's own dominions, - and by ways utterly impaliable, ex-- eept by the roads made by the go-- vernment, and through the towns - garrifoned by his troops; fo that we - could neither pals undifcovered by 6 the road, or fubfift any other way; - fo that it is in vain to attempt it.?

I was filenced, indeed, at once, and found that they were in a prifon, every jot as fecure as if they had been locked up in the caftle of Mofcow: however, it came into my thoughts, that I might certainly be made an inftrument to procure the efcape of this excellent perion, and that it was very ealy for me to carry him away, there being no guard over him in the country; and as I was not going to Molcow, but to Archangel, and that I went in the nature of a carayan, by which I was not obliged to lie in the fationary towns in the defart, but could encamp every night where I would, we might eafily pals uninteriupted to Archangel, where I could immediately fecure him on board an Englifh or Dutch fluip? and carry him off fafe along with me; and, as to his fubfiftence, and other particulars, that fhould be my care, till he fhould better fupply bimfelf.
He heard me very attentively, and looked earneffly on me all tht while I fpoke; nay, I could, fee in his very face, that what I faid put his fpirits into an exceeding ferment; his colour frequently changed, his eyes looked red, and bis heart fluttered, that it might be even perceived in his countenance; nor could he immediately anfwer me when I had done, and, as it were, expected what he would fay to it; and after he had paufed a little, he embraced me, and faid,' How un-- happy are we! unguided creatures as we are, that even our greateft acts - of friendhip are made inares to us, - and we are made tempters of one an-- other! My dear triend,' faid he, - your offer is fo fincere, has fuch - kiodnefs in it, is fo difinterefted in itielf, and is fo calculated for my ad - vantage, that I mult have very little knowledge of the worht, if I did not both wonder at it, and acknowledge the obligation I have upon me to you for it. But did you believe I was

- fincere in what I have fo often faid to 6 you of my contempt of the world ? - Did you believe I fpoke my very - foul to you, and that I had really - maintained that degree of felicity - here, that had placed me above all - that the world could give me, or do - for me? Did you believe I was fin-- cere, when I told you I would not ' go back, if I was recalled even to be - all that once I was in the court, and - with the favour of the czar my - matter? Did you believe me, my - friend, to be an honeft man, or did - you think me to be a boafting hypo' crite ?' Here he Itopped, as if he would hear what I would fay; but, indeed, I foon after perceived, that he ftopped becaufe his fpirits were in motion; his heart was full of ftruggles, and he could not go on. I was, I confefs, altonified at the thing, as well as at the man and ufed fome arguments with him to urge him to fet himfelf free: that he ought to look upon this as a door opened by Heaven for his deliverance, and a fummons by Providence, who has the care and good difpofition of all events, to do himfelf good, and to render himfelf ufeful in the world.

He had by this time recovered himfelf. 'How do you know, Sir,' faid he, warmly, ' but that inftead of a fummons from Heaven, it may be a feint of another inftrument, repre6 fenting, in all the alluring' colours, to me, the fhew of felicity as a de-- liverance, which may in itfelf be my - finare, and tend direetly to my ruin? - Here I am free from the temptation - of returning to my former miferable ' greatnefs; there I am not fure, but that all the feeds of pride, ambition, 6 avarice, and luxury, which I know ' remain in my nature, may revive and take root, and, in a word, again - overwhelm me; and then the happy ' prifoner, whom you fee now mafter ' of his foul's liberty, fall be the mi-- ferable flave of his own fenfes, in the full of all perfonal liberty. Dear - Sir, let me remain in this bleffed con-- finement, banifhed from the crimes - of life, rather than purchafe a fhew - of freedom, at the expence of the li-- berty of my reafon, and at the expence of the future happinefs which ' now I have in my view, but fhall - then, I fear, quickly lofe fight of :
for I am but flefh, a man, a mere man; have paffions and affections as likely to poffefs and overthrow me - as any man. O! be not my friend ' and my tempter both together!'
If I was furprized before, I was quite dumb now, and ftood filent, looking at him ; and, indeed, admired what I faw : the ftruggle in his foul was fo great, that though the weather was extremely cold, it put him into a moft violent fweat, and I found he wanted to give vent to his mind; fo I faid a word or two, that I would leave him to confider of it, and wait on him again; and then I withdrew to my own apartment.
Abut two hours after, I heard fomebody at or near the door of the room, and I was going to open the door; but he had opened it, and came in. 'My - dear friend,' faid he, 'you had al-- molt overfet me, but I am recovered.

- Do not take it ill that I do not clofe - with your offer; I affure you, it is 6 not for want of a fenfe of the kind-
6 nefs of it in you; and I came to - máke the moft fincere acknowledg-- ment of it to you; but, I hope, I
- have got the victory over myfelf.
- My lord,' faid I, 'I hope you are - fully fatisfied, that you did not refit - the call of Heaven.'-' Sir,' faid he, - if it had been from Heaven, the fame - Power would have influenced me to * accept it; but, I hope, and am fully
- fatisfied, that it is from Heaven that
- I decline it; and I have an infinite
- fatisfaction in the parting, that you
- fall leave me an honeft man ftill,
- though not a free man.?

I had nothing to do but to acquiefce, and make profeffion to him of my having no end in it, but a fincere defire to ferve him. He embraced me very parfionately, and affured me, he was fenfible of that, and fhould always acknowledge it ; and with that he offered me a very fine prefent of fables; too much, indeed, for me to accept from a man in his circumftances; and I would have avoided them, but he would not be refufed.
The next morning I fent my fervant to his lordfhip with a fmall prefent of tea, two pieces of China damaik, and four little wedges of Japan gold, which did not all weigh above fix ounces, or thereabouts; but were far fhort of the value of his fables: which, indeed,
when I came to England, I found worth near two hundred pounds. He accepted the tea, and one piece of the damafk, and one of the pieces of gold, which had a fine ftamp upon it of the Japan coinage, which I found he took for the rarity of it, but would not take any more; and fent word by my fervant that he defired to fpeak with me.
When I carne to him, he told me, I knew what had paffed between us, and hoped I would not move him any more in that affair; but that, fince I made fuch a generous offer to him, he afked me , if I had kindnefs enough to offer the fame to another perfon that he would name to me, in whom he had a great fhare of concern. I told him, that I could not fay I inclined to do fo much for any one but himfelf, for whom I had a particular value, and thould have been glad to have been the inftrument of his deliverance; however, if he would pleafe to name the perfon to me, I would give him my anfwer, and hoped he would not be difpleafed with me, if he was with my anfwer. He told me, it was only his fon, who, though I had not feen, yet was in the fame condition with himfelf, and above two hundred miles from him, on the other fide the Oby; but that, if I confented, he would fend for him.

I made no hefitation, but told him I would do it. I made fome ceremony in letting him underfand, that it was wholly on his account; and that feeing I could not prevail on him, I would Hhew my refpect to him, by my concern for his fon. But thefe things are too edious to repeat here. He fent away the next day for his fon, and in about twenty days he came back with the meffenger, bringing fix or feven horfes, loaded with very rich furs, and which, in the whole, ainounted to a very great value.
His fervants brought the horfes into the town, but left the young lord at a difance till night, when he came incognito into our apartment, and his father prefented him to me; and, in Thort, we concerted there the manner of our travelling, and every thing proper for the jouney.
I had bought a confiderable quantity of fables, black fox-fkins, fine ermines, and fuch other furs as are very rich I fay, I had bought them in that city
for exchange for fome of the goods that he would not allow us to lis brought from China; in particular, for the cloves and nutmegs, of which I fold the greatelt part here, and the reft afterwards at Archangel, for a much better price than I could have done at London; and my partner, who was fenfible of the profit, and whofe bufinefs more particularly than mine was merchandize, was mightily pleafed with our fay, on account of the traffick we made here.
It was in the beginning of June, when 1 left this remote place, a city, I believe, little heard of in the world; and indeed it is fo far out of the road of commerce, that I know not how it thould me much talked of. We were now come to a very fmall caravan, being only thirty-two hortes and camels in all, and all of them paffed for mine, though my new guett was proprietor of eleven of them. It was moit natural alfo, that I thould take more fervants with me than Ihad before, and the young lord paffied for my freward; what great man 1 pafied for mylelf, know not, neither did it concern me to enquire. We had here the wort and the largeft defart to pals over that we met with in all the journey; indeed I call it the wortt, becaufe the way was very ceep in lome places, and very uneven in others: the bett we had to fay for it was, that we thought we had no troops of Tartars and robbers to fear, and that they never came on this fide the River Oby, or at lealt but ver feldom; but we found it otherwife.
My young lord had with him a faithful Mufcovite fervant, or rather a Si berian fervant, who was perfectly acquainted with the country; and who led us by private roads, that we avoided coming into the principal towns and cities upon the great road, fuch as Tumen, Soloy-Kamofkoy, and feveral others; becaufe the Mufcovile garrions which are kept there, are very curious and ftrict in their oblervations upon travellers, and fearching left any of the banithed perions of note thould make therr efcape that way into Mufcovy. But by this means, as we were kept out of the cities, ,o our whole journey was a derart, and we were obliged to encamp and lie in our tents, when we inight have had good accommodation in the cities on the way This the young lord was fo fenfible of,
abroad, when we came to feveral cities on the way; but lay abroad himfelf, with his fervant, in the woods, and met us always at the appointed places. We were juft entered Europe, having paffed the river Kama, which, in thefe parts, is the boundary between Europe and Afia; and the firf city on the European fide was called SoloyKamofkoy, which is as much as to fay, the great city on the River Kama: and here we thought to have feen fome evident alteration in the people, their manners, their habit, their religion, and their bulinefs; but we were miftaken; for as we had a vaft defart to pafs, which, by relation, is near feven liundred miles long in fome places, but not above two hundred miles over where we paffed it; fo, till we came pait that horrible place, we found very little difference between that country and the Mogul Tartary ; the people moftly Pagans, and little better than the lavages of America; their houles and towns full of idols, and their way of living wholly barbarous, except in the cities, as above, and the villages near them, where they are Chriftians, as they call themfelves, of the Greek church; but even thefe have their religion mingled with fo many reliques of fuperftition, that it is fcarce to be known in fome places from mere forcery and witcheraft.
In paffing this foreft, I thought, indeed, we mult, after all our dangers were, in our imagination, elcaped, as before, have been plundered and robbed, and perhaps murdered, by a troop of theieves; of what country they were, whether the roving bands of the Oftiachi, a kind of Tartars, or wild people on the banks of the Oby, had ranged thus far, or whether they were the rablehunters of Siberia, I am yet at a lofs to know; but they were all on horfeback, carried bows and arrows, and were at firlt about five and forty in number. They came fo near to us, as within about two mufquet-fhot; and, afking no quellions, they furrounded us with their horfe, and looked very earneftly upon us twice: at length they placed themfelves juft in our way; upon which we drew up in a little lime before our camels, being not above fixteen men in all; and being drawn up thus, we halted, and fent out the Siberian

Siberian fervant who attended his lord, to fee who they were. His mafter was the more willing to let him go, becaufe he was not a little apprehenfive that they were a Siberian troop fent out after him. The man came up near them with a flag of truce, and called to them; but though he fpoke feveral of their languages, or dialects of languages rather, he could not underfand a word they faid; however, after fome figns to him, not to come nearer to them at his peril; fo he faid he underfood them to mean, offering to thoot at him if he advanced; the fellow came back no wifer than he went, only that by their drefs, he faid, we believed them to be fome Tartars of Kalmuck, or of the Circaffian hords; Kalmuck, ore muft be more of them on the great defart, though he never oneard that ever any of them were feen fo far north before.
This was fmall comfort to us; however, we had no remedy. There was on our left-hand, at about a quarter of a mile's diftance, a little grove or clump of trees, which ftood clofe together, and very near the road. I immediately refolved we would advance to thofe trees, and fortify ourfelves as well as we could there; for, firf, I confidermeafure cover us from their arrows; and, in the next place, they could not come to charge us in a body. It was, indeed, my old Portugueze pilot who propofed it; and who had this excellency attending him, namely, that he was always readieft and moft apt to direct and encourage us in cafes of the moft danger. We advanced immediately with what fpeed we could, and gained that little wood; the Tartars or thieves, for we knew not what to call them, keeping their ftand, and not attempting to hinder us. When we cher, we found, four gre furisy piece fround and on py, rpringy piece gry the orter, rill or brook, was a little farther joined by another of the like bignefs, and was, in flort, the head or fource of a confiderable river, called afterwards the Wirtika. The trees which grew about this fpring, were not in all above two hundred, but were very large, and food pretty thick; fo that as foon and food pretty thick; fo that as ioon
as we got in, we faw ourfelves per-
fectly fafe from the enemy, unlers they alighted and attacked us on foot. But to make this more difficult, our Portugueze, with indefatigable application, cut down great arms of the quite off, from them hanging, not cut fo that he made a continued fence, almoft round us.
We ftaid here, waiting the motion of the enemy, fome hours, without perceiving they made any offer to ftir ; when about two hours before night they came down directly upon us ; and, though we had not perceived it, we found they had been joined by fome more of the fame, fo that they were near fourfcore horfe, whereof, however, we fancied fome were women. They came on till they were within half a fhot of our little wood, when we fired one mufquet withowt ball, and called to them in the Ruffian tongue to know what they wanted, and bid them keep off; btt, as if they knew nothing of what we faid, they came on with a double fury directly up to the wood-fide, not imagining we were fo barricadoed that they could not break in. Our old pilot was our captain, as well as he had been our engineer ; and defired of us not to fire upon them till they came within piftolfhot, that we might be fure to kill; and that when we did fire, we fhould be fure to take good aim. We bade him give the word of command; which he delayed fo long, that they were, fome of them, within two pikes length of us when we fired.

We aimed fo true (or Providence directed our fhot fo fure) that we killed fourteen of them at the firft volley, and wounded feveral others, as alfo, feveral of their horfes; for we had all of us loaded our pieces with two or three bullets apiece at leaft.

They were terribly furprized with our fire, and retreated immediately about one hundred rods from us; in which time we loaded our pieces again; and, feeing them keep that diftance, we fallied out, and caught four or five of their horfes, whofe riders, we fuppofed; were killed ; and coming up fuppofed, were we could eafily perceive to the dead, we could eanly. perceive they were Tartars, but knew not from make an excurfion of fuch an unufual length. Iength.

About

About an hour after, they made a fome town, or get help to guard us motion to attack us again, and rode round our little wood, to fee where elfe they might break in; but finding us always ready to face them, they went off again, and we refolved not to ftir from the place for that night.

We flept little, you may be fure; but fent the molt part of the night in frengthening our fituation, and barricadoing the entrances into the wood; and keeping a friet watch, we waited for day-light, and when it came, it gave us a very unwelcome difcovery indeed; for the enemy, who we thought
were dilcouraged with the reception they no lefs than three hundred, and had fet up eleven or twelve huts and tents, as if they were refolved to befiege us; and this little camp they had pitched was upon the open plain, at about three quarters of a mile from us. We were, indeed, furprized at this difcovery; and now, I confefs, I gave my felf over for loft, and all that I had. The lofs of my effects did not lie fo near me (though they were very confiderable) as the thoughts of falling into the hands of fuch barbarians at the latter end of my journey, after fo many difficulties and hazards as I had gone through; and even in fight of our port, where we expected fafety and deliverance. As for my partner, he was raging : he declared, that to lofe his goods would be his ruin; and he would rather die than be farved; and he was for fighting to the laft drop.

The young lord, as gallant as ever flefh fhewed itfelf, was for fighting to the laft drop alfo; and my old pilot was of the opinion we were able to refiff them all, in the fituation we then were in: and thus we fpent the day in debates of what we fhould do. But, towards evening, we found that the number of our enemies ftill increafed: perhaps, as they were abroad in feveral parties for prey, the firft had fent out fcouts to call for help, and to aequaint them of the booty; and we did not know but by the morning they might ttill be a greater number; fo I began to enquire of thofe people we had brought from Toboliki, if there was no other, or more private ways, by which we might avoid them in the night, and perhaps either retreat to
over the defart.
The Siberian, who was fervant tod the young lord, told us, if we defigned to avoid them, and not fight, he would engage to carry us off in the night to way that went north towards the river Petraz, by which he made no queftion but we might get away, and the Tartars never the wifer; but he faid, his lord had told him he would not return, but would rather chufe to fight. I told him, he miftook his lord; for that he was too wife a man to love fighting for the fake of it ; that $I$ knew his lord was brave enough, by what he had fhewed already ; but that his lord knew better than to defire to have feventeen or eighteen men fight five hundred, unlefs an unavoidable neceffity forced them to it; and that if he thought it poffible for us to efcape in the night, polfible for wh ecrape in he night, we had $H$ gell tempt it. He aniwered, if his lord gave him fuch order, he would lore his life if he did not perform it. We foon brought his lord to give that order, though privately, and we immediately prepared for the putting it in practice.

- And firf, as foon as it began to be dark, we kindled a fire in our little camp, which we kept burning, and prepared fo as to make it burn all night, that the Tartars might conclude we wereftill there; but as foon as it was dark, that is to fay, fo as we could fee the ftars, (for our guide would not ftir before) having all our would not ftir before) having all our horles and camels ready loaden, we found fteered himfelf by the pole, or north-ftar, all the country being level for a long way.
After we had travelled two hours very hard, it began to be lighter ftill, not that it was quite dark all night, but the moon began to rife, fo that in fhort it was rather lighter than we wifhed it to be; but by fix o'clock next morning we were gotten near forty miles, though the truth is, we almof foiled our horfes. Here we found a Ruffian village, named Kirmazinfkoy, where we refted, and heard nothing, where we relted, and heard nothing of the Calmuck Tartars that day.
About two hours before night we fet About two hours before night we fet
out again, and travelled till eight the next morning, though net quite fo

[^1]haitily as before; and about feven $0^{\circ}$ clock we paffed a little river called Kirtzo, and came to a good large town inhabited by Ruffians, and very populous, called Ozomys. There we heard that feveral troops or hords of Calmucks had been abroad upon the defart, but that we were now compleatly out of danger of them, which was to our great fatisfaction you may be fure. Here we were obliged to get fome frefh horfes, and having need enough of reft, we ftaid five days; and my partner and I agreed to give the honeft Siberian who brought us thither the value of ten piftoles for his conducting us.
In five days more we came to Veuffima, upon the River Witzogda, which running into the River Dwina, we were there very happily near the end of our travels by land, that river being navigable in feven days paffage to Archangel. From hence we came to Iawrenkoy, where the river joins, the d of July; and provided ourfelves 3d of J and a barge for with two luggage boats and a barge for our convenience. all fafe at Archan7 th, and arrived all gel the 18 th, having been a year, five months, and three days on the journey, including our ftay of eight months and odd days at. Toboliki.
We were obliged to flay at this place fix weeks for the arrival of the hhips, and muft have tarried longer had not a Hamburgher come in above a month fooner than any of the Englifh flips; when, after fome confideration that the city of Hamburgh might hap pen to be as good a market for our goods as London, we all took freight with him ; and having put our goods with him; and having put our for me to put my fteward on board to take care of them; by which means my young lord had a fufficient opportu-
nity to conceal himfelf, never coming on fhore again, in all the time we ftaid there; and this he did that he might not be feen in the city, where fome of the Mofcow merchants would certainly have feen and difcovered him.
We failed from Archangel the 2oth of Auguft the fame year; and, after no extraordinary bad voyage, arrived in the Elbe the 13 th of September. Here my partner and I found a very good fale for our goods, as well thole of China as the fables, \&cc. of Siberia; and dividing the produce of our effeets, and dividing the produce of 51.17 s .3 d . my fhare amounted to 3475 . 17 s .3 d notwithitanding fo many lores we had uftained, and charges we had been at only remembering that I had included in this about fix hundred pounds worth of diam.
Here the young lord took his leave of us, and went up the Elbe, in order to go to the court of Vienna, where he refolved to feek protection, and where he could correfpond with thofe of his father's friends who were left alive. He did not part without all the teftimonies he could give of gratitude for the fervice I had done him, and his fenfe of my kindnefs to the prince his father.
To conclude, having faid near four months in Hamburgh, I came from thence over land to the Hague, where I embarked in the packet, and arrived in London the roth of January 1705, having been gone from England ten years and nine months.
And here, refolving to harafs myfelf no more, I am preparing for a longer journey than all thefe, having lived feventy-two years a life of infinite variety, and learned fufficiently to know the value of retirement, and the bleffing of ending our days in peace.

(1)


[^0]:    $\mathrm{I}_{2}$
    ftead

[^1]:    hattily

